

# Libnds Documentation

## Introduction

Welcome to the libnds reference documentation.

## 2D engine API

## video.h File Reference

contains the basic definitions for controlling the video hardware. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
#include <nds/arm9/sassert.h>
```

## Defines

```
#define ARGB16(a, r, g, b) ( ((a) << 15) | (r)|((g)<<5)|((b)<<10))
    Macro to convert 5 bit r g b components plus 1 bit alpha into a single 16 bit
    ARGB triplet.

#define BG\_GFX ((u16\*)0x6000000)
    background graphics memory

#define BG\_GFX\_SUB ((u16\*)0x6200000)
    background graphics memory (sub engine)

#define BG\_PALETTE ((u16\*)0x05000000)
    background palette memory

#define BG\_PALETTE\_SUB ((u16\*)0x05000400)
    background palette memory (sub engine)

#define OAM ((u16\*)0x07000000)
    pointer to Object Attribute Memory

#define OAM\_SUB ((u16\*)0x07000400)
    pointer to Object Attribute Memory (Sub engine)

#define RGB15(r, g, b) ((r)|((g)<<5)|((b)<<10))
    Macro to convert 5 bit r g b components into a single 15 bit RGB triplet.

#define SCREEN\_HEIGHT 192
    Screen height in pixels.

#define SCREEN\_WIDTH 256
    Screen width in pixels.

#define SPRITE\_GFX ((u16\*)0x6400000)
    sprite graphics memory

#define SPRITE\_GFX\_SUB ((u16\*)0x6600000)
    sprite graphics memory (sub engine)

#define SPRITE\_PALETTE ((u16\*)0x05000200)
    sprite palette memory
```

```

#define SPRITE\_PALETTE\_SUB ((u16\*)0x05000600)
    sprite palette memory (sub engine)
#define VRAM\_A ((u16\*)0x6800000)
    pointer to vram bank A mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_B ((u16\*)0x6820000)
    pointer to vram bank B mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_C ((u16\*)0x6840000)
    pointer to vram bank C mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_D ((u16\*)0x6860000)
    pointer to vram bank D mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_E ((u16\*)0x6880000)
    pointer to vram bank E mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_E\_EXT\_PALETTE ((\_ext\_palette \*)VRAM_E)
    Used for accessing vram E as an extended palette.
#define VRAM\_F ((u16\*)0x6890000)
    pointer to vram bank F mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_F\_EXT\_PALETTE ((\_ext\_palette \*)VRAM_F)
    Used for accessing vram F as an extended palette.
#define VRAM\_F\_EXT\_SPR\_PALETTE ((\_palette \*)VRAM_F)
    Used for accessing vram F as an extended sprite palette.
#define VRAM\_G ((u16\*)0x6894000)
    pointer to vram bank G mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_G\_EXT\_PALETTE ((\_ext\_palette \*)VRAM_G)
    Used for accessing vram G as an extended palette.
#define VRAM\_G\_EXT\_SPR\_PALETTE ((\_palette \*)VRAM_G)
    Used for accessing vram G as an extended sprite palette.
#define VRAM\_H ((u16\*)0x6898000)
    pointer to vram bank H mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_H\_EXT\_PALETTE ((\_ext\_palette \*)VRAM_H)
    Used for accessing vram H as an extended palette.
#define VRAM\_I ((u16\*)0x68A0000)
    pointer to vram bank I mapped as LCD
#define VRAM\_I\_EXT\_SPR\_PALETTE ((\_palette \*)VRAM_I)
    Used for accessing vram I as an extended sprite palette.

```

## Typedefs

```

typedef
\_palette \_ext\_palette [16]
    An array of 16 256-color palettes.
typedef u16 \_palette [256]
    an array of 256 15-bit RGB values

```

## Enumerations

```
enum VideoMode {
    MODE\_0\_2D = 0x10000,
    MODE\_1\_2D = 0x10001,
    MODE\_2\_2D = 0x10002,
    MODE\_3\_2D = 0x10003,
    MODE\_4\_2D = 0x10004,
    MODE\_5\_2D = 0x10005,
    MODE\_6\_2D = 0x10006,
    MODE\_0\_3D = (0x10000 | (1 << 8) | (1<<3) ),
    MODE\_1\_3D = (0x10001 | (1 << 8) | (1<<3) ),
    MODE\_2\_3D = (0x10002 | (1 << 8) | (1<<3) ),
    MODE\_3\_3D = (0x10003 | (1 << 8) | (1<<3) ),
    MODE\_4\_3D = (0x10004 | (1 << 8) | (1<<3) ),
    MODE\_5\_3D = (0x10005 | (1 << 8) | (1<<3) ),
    MODE\_6\_3D = (0x10006 | (1 << 8) | (1<<3) ),
    MODE\_FIFO = (3<<16),
    MODE\_FB0 = (0x00020000),
    MODE\_FB1 = (0x00060000),
    MODE\_FB2 = (0x000A0000),
    MODE\_FB3 = (0x000E0000)
}
```

The allowed video modes of the 2D processors

[More...](#)

```
enum VRAM\_A\_TYPE {
    VRAM\_A\_LCD = 0,
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_BG = 1,
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06000000 = 1 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06020000 = 1 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06040000 = 1 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06060000 = 1 | (( 3 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_SPRITE = 2,
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_SPRITE\_0x06400000 = 2 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_MAIN\_SPRITE\_0x06420000 = 2 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_TEXTURE = 3,
    VRAM\_A\_TEXTURE\_SLOT0 = 3 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_TEXTURE\_SLOT1 = 3 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_TEXTURE\_SLOT2 = 3 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM\_A\_TEXTURE\_SLOT3 = 3 | (( 3 )<<3)
}
```

Allowed VRAM bank A modes.

[More...](#)

```
enum VRAM\_B\_TYPE {
    VRAM\_B\_LCD = 0,
    VRAM\_B\_MAIN\_BG = 1 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM\_B\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06000000 = 1 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM\_B\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06020000 = 1 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM\_B\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06040000 = 1 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM\_B\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06060000 = 1 | (( 3 )<<3),
    VRAM\_B\_MAIN\_SPRITE = 2,
```

```

VRAM_B_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06400000 = 2 | (( 0 )<<3),
VRAM_B_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06420000 = 2 | (( 1 )<<3),
VRAM_B_TEXTURE = 3 | (( 1 )<<3),
VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT0 = 3 | (( 0 )<<3),
VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT1 = 3 | (( 1 )<<3),
VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT2 = 3 | (( 2 )<<3),
VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT3 = 3 | (( 3 )<<3)

```

}

Allowed VRAM bank B modes.

[More...](#)

```

enum VRAM_C_TYPE {
    VRAM_C_LCD = 0,
    VRAM_C_MAIN_BG = 1 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06000000 = 1 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06020000 = 1 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06040000 = 1 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06060000 = 1 | (( 3 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_ARM7 = 2,
    VRAM_C_ARM7_0x06000000 = 2 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_ARM7_0x06020000 = 2 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_SUB_BG = 4,
    VRAM_C_SUB_BG_0x06200000 = 4 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_TEXTURE = 3 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT0 = 3 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT1 = 3 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT2 = 3 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT3 = 3 | (( 3 )<<3)

```

}

Allowed VRAM bank C modes.

[More...](#)

```

enum VRAM_D_TYPE {
    VRAM_D_LCD = 0,
    VRAM_D_MAIN_BG = 1 | (( 3 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06000000 = 1 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06020000 = 1 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06040000 = 1 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06060000 = 1 | (( 3 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_ARM7 = 2 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_ARM7_0x06000000 = 2 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_ARM7_0x06020000 = 2 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_SUB_SPRITE = 4,
    VRAM_D_TEXTURE = 3 | (( 3 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT0 = 3 | (( 0 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT1 = 3 | (( 1 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT2 = 3 | (( 2 )<<3),
    VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT3 = 3 | (( 3 )<<3)

```

}

Allowed VRAM bank D modes.

[More...](#)

```
enum VRAM_E_TYPE {  
    VRAM_E_LCD = 0,  
    VRAM_E_MAIN_BG = 1,  
    VRAM_E_MAIN_SPRITE = 2,  
    VRAM_E_TEX_PALETTE = 3,  
    VRAM_E_BG_EXT_PALETTE = 4  
}
```

Allowed VRAM bank E modes.

[More...](#)

```
enum VRAM_F_TYPE {  
    VRAM_F_LCD = 0,  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_BG = 1,  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06000000 = 1 | (( 0 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06004000 = 1 | (( 1 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06010000 = 1 | (( 2 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06014000 = 1 | (( 3 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE = 2,  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06400000 = 2 | (( 0 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06404000 = 2 | (( 1 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06410000 = 2 | (( 2 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06414000 = 2 | (( 3 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_TEX_PALETTE = 3,  
    VRAM_F_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT0 = 3 | (( 0 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT1 = 3 | (( 1 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT4 = 3 | (( 2 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT5 = 3 | (( 3 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_BG_EXT_PALETTE = 4,  
    VRAM_F_BG_EXT_PALETTE_SLOT01 = 4 | (( 0 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_BG_EXT_PALETTE_SLOT23 = 4 | (( 1 )<<3),  
    VRAM_F_SPRITE_EXT_PALETTE = 5  
}
```

Allowed VRAM bank F modes.

[More...](#)

```
enum VRAM_G_TYPE {  
    VRAM_G_LCD = 0,  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_BG = 1,  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_BG_0x06000000 = 1 | (( 0 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_BG_0x06004000 = 1 | (( 1 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_BG_0x06010000 = 1 | (( 2 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_BG_0x06014000 = 1 | (( 3 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_SPRITE = 2,  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06400000 = 2 | (( 0 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06404000 = 2 | (( 1 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06410000 = 2 | (( 2 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06414000 = 2 | (( 3 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_TEX_PALETTE = 3,  
    VRAM_G_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT0 = 3 | (( 0 )<<3),  
    VRAM_G_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT1 = 3 | (( 1 )<<3),  
}
```

```

VRAM_G_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT4 = 3 | (( 2 )<<3),
VRAM_G_TEX_PALETTE_SLOT5 = 3 | (( 3 )<<3),
VRAM_G_BG_EXT_PALETTE = 4,
VRAM_G_BG_EXT_PALETTE_SLOT01 = 4 | (( 0 )<<3),
VRAM_G_BG_EXT_PALETTE_SLOT23 = 4 | (( 1 )<<3),
VRAM_G_SPRITE_EXT_PALETTE = 5
}

```

Allowed VRAM bank G modes.

[More...](#)

```

enum VRAM_H_TYPE {
    VRAM_H_LCD = 0,
    VRAM_H_SUB_BG = 1,
    VRAM_H_SUB_BG_EXT_PALETTE = 2
}

```

Allowed VRAM bank H modes.

[More...](#)

```

enum VRAM_I_TYPE {
    VRAM_I_LCD = 0,
    VRAM_I_SUB_BG_0x06208000 = 1,
    VRAM_I_SUB_SPRITE = 2,
    VRAM_I_SUB_SPRITE_EXT_PALETTE = 3
}

```

Allowed VRAM bank I modes.

[More...](#)

## Functions

```

static void setBackgroundColor (const u16 color)
    sets the backdrop color of the main engine.
static void setBackgroundColorSub (const u16 color)
    sets the backdrop color of the sub engine.
void setBrightness (int screen, int level)
    sets the screens brightness.
static bool video3DEnabled ()
    determine if 3D is enabled
static void videoBgDisable (int number)
    disables the specified background on the main engine
static void videoBgDisableSub (int number)
    disables the specified background on the sub engine
static void videoBgEnable (int number)
    enables the specified background on the main engine
static void videoBgEnableSub (int number)
    enables the specified background on the sub engine
static int videoGetMode ()

```

return the main 2D engine video mode

static int [videoGetModeSub](#) ()  
return the main 2D engine video mode

static void [videoSetMode](#) ([u32](#) mode)  
the main 2D engine video mode

static void [videoSetModeSub](#) ([u32](#) mode)  
the sub 2D engine video mode

[u32](#) [vramDefault](#) ()  
Set VRAM banks to basic default.

void [vramRestoreBanks\\_EFG](#) ([u32](#) vramTemp)  
Restore the E,F,G bank modes.

void [vramRestorePrimaryBanks](#) ([u32](#) vramTemp)  
Restore the main 4 bank modes.

static void [vramSetBankA](#) ([VRAM\\_A\\_TYPE](#) a)  
Set bank A to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankB](#) ([VRAM\\_B\\_TYPE](#) b)  
Set bank B to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankC](#) ([VRAM\\_C\\_TYPE](#) c)  
Set bank C to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankD](#) ([VRAM\\_D\\_TYPE](#) d)  
Set bank D to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankE](#) ([VRAM\\_E\\_TYPE](#) e)  
Set bank E to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankF](#) ([VRAM\\_F\\_TYPE](#) f)  
Set bank F to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankG](#) ([VRAM\\_G\\_TYPE](#) g)  
Set bank G to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankH](#) ([VRAM\\_H\\_TYPE](#) h)  
Set bank H to the indicated mapping.

static void [vramSetBankI](#) ([VRAM\\_I\\_TYPE](#) i)  
Set bank I to the indicated mapping.

[u32](#) [vramSetBanks\\_EFG](#) ([VRAM\\_E\\_TYPE](#) e, [VRAM\\_F\\_TYPE](#) f, [VRAM\\_G\\_TYPE](#) g)  
Set E,F,G bank modes.

[u32](#) [vramSetPrimaryBanks](#) ([VRAM\\_A\\_TYPE](#) a, [VRAM\\_B\\_TYPE](#) b, [VRAM\\_C\\_TYPE](#) c, [VRAM\\_D\\_TYPE](#) d)  
Set the main 4 bank modes.

---

## Detailed Description

contains the basic definitions for controlling the video hardware.

# Intro

[Video.h](#) contains the basic definitions for controlling the video hardware.

## Video Ram Banks

The Nintendo DS has nine banks of video memory which may be put to a variety of uses. They can hold the graphics for your sprites, the textures for your 3D space ships, the tiles for your 2D platformer, or a direct map of pixels to render to the screen. Figuring out how to effectively utilize this flexible but limited amount of memory will be one the most challenging endeavors you will face early homebrew development.

The nine banks can be utilized as enumerated by the VRAM types. Banks are labled A-I. In order to utilize 2D or 3D texture graphics, memory must be mapped for these purposes.

For instance: If you initialize a 2D background on the main engine you will be expected to define both an offset for its map data and an offset for its tile graphics (bitmapped backgrounds differ slightly). These offsets are referenced from the start of 2D background graphics memory. On the main display 2D background graphics begin at 0x6000000.

Without mapping a VRAM bank to this location data written to your background tile and map offsets will be lost.

VRAM banks can be mapped to specific addresses for specific purposes. In our case, any of the 4 main banks and several of the smaller ones can be mapped to the main 2D background engine. (A B C and D banks are referred to as 'main' because they are 128KB and flexible in usage)

```
vramSetBankA (VRAM_A_MAIN_BG) ;
```

The above would map the 128KB of VRAM\_A to 0x6000000 for use as main background graphics and maps (you can offset the mapping as well and the available offsets are defined in the VRAM\_A\_TYPE enumeration)

## Video Ram Bank sizes

- VRAM A: 128kb
  - VRAM B: 128kb
  - VRAM C: 128kb
  - VRAM D: 128kb
  - VRAM E: 64kb
  - VRAM F: 16kb
  - VRAM G: 16kb
  - VRAM H: 32kb
  - VRAM I: 16kb
-



# Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [VideoMode](#)

The allowed video modes of the 2D processors

Main 2D engine

Mode	BG0	BG1	BG2	BG3
0	T	T	T	T
1	T	T	T	R
2	T	T	R	R
3	T	T	T	E
4	T	T	R	E
5	T	T	E	E
6		L		

T = Text  
R = Rotation  
E = Extended Rotation  
L = Large Bitmap background

Sub 2D engine

Mode	BG0	BG1	BG2	BG3
0	T	T	T	T
1	T	T	T	R
2	T	T	R	R
3	T	T	T	E
4	T	T	R	E
5	T	T	E	E

## Enumerator:

*MODE\_0\_2D* 4 2D backgrounds

*MODE\_1\_2D* 4 2D backgrounds

*MODE\_2\_2D* 4 2D backgrounds

*MODE\_3\_2D* 4 2D backgrounds

*MODE\_4\_2D* 4 2D backgrounds

*MODE\_5\_2D* 4 2D backgrounds

*MODE\_6\_2D* 4 2D backgrounds

*MODE\_0\_3D* 3 2D backgrounds 1 3D background (Main engine only)

*MODE\_1\_3D* 3 2D backgrounds 1 3D background (Main engine only)

*MODE\_2\_3D* 3 2D backgrounds 1 3D background (Main engine only)

*MODE\_3\_3D* 3 2D backgrounds 1 3D background (Main engine only)

*MODE\_4\_3D* 3 2D backgrounds 1 3D background (Main engine only)

*MODE\_5\_3D* 3 2D backgrounds 1 3D background (Main engine only)

*MODE\_6\_3D* 3 2D backgrounds 1 3D background (Main engine only)

*MODE\_FIFO* video display from main memory

*MODE\_FB0* video display directly from VRAM\_A in LCD mode

*MODE\_FB1* video display directly from VRAM\_B in LCD mode

*MODE\_FB2* video display directly from VRAM\_C in LCD mode

*MODE\_FB3* video display directly from VRAM\_D in LCD mode

enum [VRAM\\_A\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank A modes.

**Enumerator:**

<i>VRAM_A_LCD</i>	maps vram a to lcd.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_BG</i>	maps vram a to main engine background slot 0.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_BG_0x06000000</i>	maps vram a to main engine background slot 0.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_BG_0x06020000</i>	maps vram a to main engine background slot 1.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_BG_0x06040000</i>	maps vram a to main engine background slot 2.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_BG_0x06060000</i>	maps vram a to main engine background slot 3.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_SPRITE</i>	maps vram a to main engine sprites slot 0.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06400000</i>	maps vram a to main engine sprites slot 0.
<i>VRAM_A_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06420000</i>	maps vram a to main engine sprites slot 1.
<i>VRAM_A_TEXTURE</i>	maps vram a to 3d texture slot 0.
<i>VRAM_A_TEXTURE_SLOT0</i>	maps vram a to 3d texture slot 0.
<i>VRAM_A_TEXTURE_SLOT1</i>	maps vram a to 3d texture slot 1.
<i>VRAM_A_TEXTURE_SLOT2</i>	maps vram a to 3d texture slot 2.
<i>VRAM_A_TEXTURE_SLOT3</i>	maps vram a to 3d texture slot 3.

enum [VRAM\\_B\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank B modes.

**Enumerator:**

<code>VRAM_B_LCD</code>	maps vram b to lcd.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_BG</code>	maps vram b to main engine background slot 1.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_BG_0x06000000</code>	maps vram b to main engine background slot 0.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_BG_0x06020000</code>	maps vram b to main engine background slot 1.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_BG_0x06040000</code>	maps vram b to main engine background slot 2.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_BG_0x06060000</code>	maps vram b to main engine background slot 3.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_SPRITE</code>	maps vram b to main engine sprites slot 0.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06400000</code>	maps vram b to main engine sprites slot 0.
<code>VRAM_B_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06420000</code>	maps vram b to main engine sprites slot 1.
<code>VRAM_B_TEXTURE</code>	maps vram b to 3d texture slot 1.
<code>VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT0</code>	maps vram b to 3d texture slot 0.
<code>VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT1</code>	maps vram b to 3d texture slot 1.
<code>VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT2</code>	maps vram b to 3d texture slot 2.
<code>VRAM_B_TEXTURE_SLOT3</code>	maps vram b to 3d texture slot 3.

enum [VRAM\\_C\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank C modes.

**Enumerator:**

<code>VRAM_C_LCD</code>	maps vram c to lcd.
<code>VRAM_C_MAIN_BG</code>	maps vram c to main engine background slot 2.
<code>VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06000000</code>	maps vram c to main engine background slot 0.
<code>VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06020000</code>	maps vram c to main engine background slot 1.
<code>VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06040000</code>	maps vram c to main engine background slot 2.
<code>VRAM_C_MAIN_BG_0x06060000</code>	maps vram c to main engine background slot 3.
<code>VRAM_C_ARM7</code>	maps vram c to ARM7 workram slot 0.

<i>VRAM_C_ARM7_0x06000000</i>	maps vram c to ARM7 workram slot 0.
<i>VRAM_C_ARM7_0x06020000</i>	maps vram c to ARM7 workram slot 1.
<i>VRAM_C_SUB_BG</i>	maps vram c to sub engine background slot 0.
<i>VRAM_C_SUB_BG_0x06200000</i>	maps vram c to sub engine background slot 0.
<i>VRAM_C_TEXTURE</i>	maps vram c to 3d texture slot 2.
<i>VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT0</i>	maps vram c to 3d texture slot 0.
<i>VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT1</i>	maps vram c to 3d texture slot 1.
<i>VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT2</i>	maps vram c to 3d texture slot 2.
<i>VRAM_C_TEXTURE_SLOT3</i>	maps vram c to 3d texture slot 3.

enum [VRAM\\_D\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank D modes.

**Enumerator:**

<i>VRAM_D_LCD</i>	maps vram d to lcd.
<i>VRAM_D_MAIN_BG</i>	maps vram d to main engine background slot 3.
<i>VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06000000</i>	maps vram d to main engine background slot 0.
<i>VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06020000</i>	maps vram d to main engine background slot 1.
<i>VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06040000</i>	maps vram d to main engine background slot 2.
<i>VRAM_D_MAIN_BG_0x06060000</i>	maps vram d to main engine background slot 3.
<i>VRAM_D_ARM7</i>	maps vram d to ARM7 workram slot 1.
<i>VRAM_D_ARM7_0x06000000</i>	maps vram d to ARM7 workram slot 0.
<i>VRAM_D_ARM7_0x06020000</i>	maps vram d to ARM7 workram slot 1.
<i>VRAM_D_SUB_SPRITE</i>	maps vram d to sub engine sprites slot 0.
<i>VRAM_D_TEXTURE</i>	maps vram d to 3d texture slot 3.
<i>VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT0</i>	maps vram d to 3d texture slot 0.
<i>VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT1</i>	maps vram d to 3d texture slot 1.
<i>VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT2</i>	maps vram d to 3d texture slot 2.
<i>VRAM_D_TEXTURE_SLOT3</i>	maps vram d to 3d texture slot 3.

enum [VRAM\\_E\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank E modes.

**Enumerator:**

<i>VRAM_E_LCD</i>	maps vram e to lcd.
<i>VRAM_E_MAIN_BG</i>	maps vram e to main engine background first half of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_E_MAIN_SPRITE</i>	maps vram e to main engine sprites first half of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_E_TEX_PALETTE</i>	maps vram e to 3d texture palette slot 0-3.
<i>VRAM_E_BG_EXT_PALETTE</i>	maps vram e to main engine background extended palette.

enum [VRAM\\_F\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank F modes.

**Enumerator:**

<i>VRAM_F_LCD</i>	maps vram f to lcd.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_BG</i>	maps vram f to main engine background first part of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06000000</i>	maps vram f to main engine background first part of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06004000</i>	maps vram f to main engine background second part of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06010000</i>	maps vram f to main engine background second half of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_BG_0x06014000</i>	maps vram f to main engine background second part of second half of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE</i>	maps vram f to main engine sprites first part of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06400000</i>	maps vram f to main engine sprites first part of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06404000</i>	maps vram f to main engine sprites second part of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06410000</i>	maps vram f to main engine sprites second half of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_MAIN_SPRITE_0x06414000</i>	maps vram f to main engine sprites second part of second half of slot 0.
<i>VRAM_F_TEX_PALETTE</i>	maps vram f to 3d texture palette slot 0.

**VRAM\_F\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL** maps vram f to 3d texture palette slot 0.  
**OT0**  
**VRAM\_F\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL** maps vram f to 3d texture palette slot 1.  
**OT1**  
**VRAM\_F\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL** maps vram f to 3d texture palette slot 4.  
**OT4**  
**VRAM\_F\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL** maps vram f to 3d texture palette slot 5.  
**OT5**  
**VRAM\_F\_BG\_EXT\_PALETTE** maps vram f to main engine background extended  
palette slot 0 and 1.  
  
**VRAM\_F\_BG\_EXT\_PALETTE** maps vram f to main engine background extended  
**\_SLOT01** palette slot 0 and 1.  
  
**VRAM\_F\_BG\_EXT\_PALETTE** maps vram f to main engine background extended  
**\_SLOT23** palette slot 2 and 3.  
  
**VRAM\_F\_SPRITE\_EXT\_PALE** maps vram f to main engine sprites extended palette.  
**TTE**

enum [VRAM\\_G\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank G modes.

#### Enumerator:

**VRAM\_G\_LCD** maps vram g to lcd.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_BG** maps vram g to main engine background first part of  
slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06000** maps vram g to main engine background first part of  
**000** slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06004** maps vram g to main engine background second part  
**000** of slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06010** maps vram g to main engine background second half  
**000** of slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_BG\_0x06014** maps vram g to main engine background second part  
**000** of second half of slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_SPRITE** maps vram g to main engine sprites first part of slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_SPRITE\_0x0** maps vram g to main engine sprites first part of slot 0.  
**6400000**  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_SPRITE\_0x0** maps vram g to main engine sprites second part of  
**6404000** slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_SPRITE\_0x0** maps vram g to main engine sprites second half of  
**6410000** slot 0.  
  
**VRAM\_G\_MAIN\_SPRITE\_0x0** maps vram g to main engine sprites second part of  
**6414000**

second half of slot 0.

*VRAM\_G\_TEX\_PALETTE* maps vram g to 3d texture palette slot 0.

*VRAM\_G\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL* maps vram g to 3d texture palette slot 0.  
*OT0*

*VRAM\_G\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL* maps vram g to 3d texture palette slot 1.  
*OT1*

*VRAM\_G\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL* maps vram g to 3d texture palette slot 4.  
*OT4*

*VRAM\_G\_TEX\_PALETTE\_SL* maps vram g to 3d texture palette slot 5.  
*OT5*

*VRAM\_G\_BG\_EXT\_PALETTE* maps vram g to main engine background extended palette slot 0 and 1.

*VRAM\_G\_BG\_EXT\_PALETTE* maps vram g to main engine background extended  
*\_SLOT01* palette slot 0 and 1.

*VRAM\_G\_BG\_EXT\_PALETTE* maps vram g to main engine background extended  
*\_SLOT23* palette slot 2 and 3.

*VRAM\_G\_SPRITE\_EXT\_PAL* maps vram g to main engine sprites extended palette.  
*ETTE*

enum [VRAM\\_H\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank H modes.

**Enumerator:**

*VRAM\_H\_LCD* maps vram h to lcd.

*VRAM\_H\_SUB\_BG* maps vram h to sub engine background first 2 parts of slot 0.

*VRAM\_H\_SUB\_BG\_EXT\_PALE* maps vram h to sub engine background extended  
*TTE* palette.

enum [VRAM\\_I\\_TYPE](#)

Allowed VRAM bank I modes.

**Enumerator:**

*VRAM\_I\_LCD* maps vram i to lcd.

*VRAM\_I\_SUB\_BG\_0x06208000* maps vram i to sub engine background thirteenth part of slot 0.

*VRAM\_I\_SUB\_SPRITE* maps vram i to sub engine sprites.

*VRAM\_I\_SUB\_SPRITE\_EXT\_PAL* maps vram i to sub engine sprites extended  
*ETTE* palette.

---

## Function Documentation

`static void setBackdropColor ( const u16 color ) [inline, static]`

sets the backdrop color of the main engine.

the backdrop color is displayed when all pixels at a given location are transparent (no sprite or background is visible there).

### Parameters:

*color* the color that the backdrop of the main engine should display.

<background palette memory

`static void setBackdropColorSub ( const u16 color ) [inline, static]`

sets the backdrop color of the sub engine.

the backdrop color is displayed when all pixels at a given location are transparent (no sprite or background is visible there).

### Parameters:

*color* the color that the backdrop of the sub engine should display.

<background palette memory (sub engine)

`void setBrightness ( int screen,  
                          int level  
                          )`

sets the screens brightness.

### Parameters:

*screen* 1 = main screen, 2 = subscreen, 3 = both

*level* -16 = black, 0 = full brightness, 16 = white

`static bool video3DEnabled ( ) [inline, static]`

determine if 3D is enabled

### Returns:

true if 3D is enabled

`static void videoBgDisable ( int number ) [inline, static]`

disables the specified background on the main engine

### Parameters:

*number* the background number (0-3)

`static void videoBgDisableSub ( int number ) [inline, static]`

disables the specified background on the sub engine

### Parameters:

*number* the background number (0-3)

`static void videoBgEnable ( int number ) [inline, static]`

enables the specified background on the main engine

### Parameters:

*number* the background number (0-3)

`static void videoBgEnableSub ( int number ) [inline, static]`

enables the specified background on the sub engine



**Parameters:**

number the background number (0-3)

```
static int videoGetMode ( ) [inline, static]
```

return the main 2D engine video mode

**Returns:**

the video mode

```
static int videoGetModeSub ( ) [inline, static]
```

return the main 2D engine video mode

**Returns:**

the video mode

```
static void videoSetMode ( u32 mode ) [inline, static]
```

the main 2D engine video mode

**Parameters:**

mode the video mode to set

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#),  
[capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/16bit\\_color\\_bmp/source/template.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/256\\_color\\_bmp/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/advanced.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/basic.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/handmade.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/scrolling.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/Double\\_Buffer/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/rotation/source/main.cpp](#),

[Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/rotscale\\_text/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/fire\\_and\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_test/source/main.c](#), and [time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

static void videoSetModeSub ( [u32](#) *mode* ) [inline, static]  
the sub 2D engine video mode

**Parameters:**

*mode* the video mode to set

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettered\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/16bit\\_color\\_bmp/source/template.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/custom\\_font/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/rotscale\\_text/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Sprites/fire\\_and\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), and [Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#).

[u32](#) *vramDefault* ( )  
Set VRAM banks to basic default.

**Returns:**

the previous settings

void vramRestoreBanks\_EFG ( [u32](#) *vramTemp* )  
Restore the E,F,G bank modes.

**Parameters:**

*vramTemp* restores the E,F,G bank modes to the value encoded in *vramTemp*  
(returned from *vramSetBanks\_EFG*)

void vramRestorePrimaryBanks ( [u32](#) *vramTemp* )  
Restore the main 4 bank modes.

**Parameters:**

*vramTemp* restores the main 4 banks to the value encoded in *vramTemp* (returned  
from *vramSetMainBanks*)

static void vramSetBankA ( [VRAM\\_A\\_TYPE](#) *a* ) [inline, static]  
Set bank A to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

a the mapping of the bank

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/16bit\\_color\\_bmp/source/template.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/256\\_color\\_bmp/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/advanced.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/basic.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/handmade.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/scrolling.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/rotation/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

static void vramSetBankB ( [VRAM\\_B\\_TYPE](#) b ) [inline, static]

Set bank B to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

b the mapping of the bank

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/basic.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#).

static void vramSetBankC ( [VRAM\\_C\\_TYPE](#) c ) [inline, static]

Set bank C to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

c the mapping of the bank

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/basic.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/custom\\_font/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Printing/rotscale\\_text/source/main.c](#).

static void vramSetBankD ( [VRAM\\_D\\_TYPE](#) d ) [inline, static]

Set bank D to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

d the mapping of the bank

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/basic.cpp](#), [Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#).

```
static void vramSetBankE ( VRAM\_E\_TYPE e ) [inline, static]
```

Set bank E to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

e the mapping of the bank

```
static void vramSetBankF ( VRAM\_F\_TYPE f ) [inline, static]
```

Set bank F to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

f the mapping of the bank

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#).

```
static void vramSetBankG ( VRAM\_G\_TYPE g ) [inline, static]
```

Set bank G to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

g the mapping of the bank

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void vramSetBankH ( VRAM\_H\_TYPE h ) [inline, static]
```

Set bank H to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

h the mapping of the bank

```
static void vramSetBankI ( VRAM\_I\_TYPE i ) [inline, static]
```

Set bank I to the indicated mapping.

**Parameters:**

i the mapping of the bank

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#).

```
u32 vramSetBanks_EFG ( VRAM\_E\_TYPE e,  
                        VRAM\_F\_TYPE f,  
                        VRAM\_G\_TYPE g  
                        )
```

Set E,F,G bank modes.

**Parameters:**

- e mapping mode of VRAM\_E
- f mapping mode of VRAM\_F
- g mapping mode of VRAM\_G

**Returns:**

the previous mode

```
u32 vramSetPrimaryBanks ( VRAM\_A\_TYPE  a,  
                           VRAM\_B\_TYPE  b,  
                           VRAM\_C\_TYPE  c,  
                           VRAM\_D\_TYPE  d  
                           )
```

Set the main 4 bank modes.

**Parameters:**

- a mapping mode of VRAM\_A
- b mapping mode of VRAM\_B
- c mapping mode of VRAM\_C
- d mapping mode of VRAM\_D

**Returns:**

the previous mode

**Examples:**

[capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/Double\\_Buffer/source/main.cpp](#), and [Graphics/Sprites/fire\\_and\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#).

---

# background.h File Reference

nds background defines and functionality. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
#include <nds/arm9/video.h>
#include <nds/arm9/sassert.h>
#include <nds/memory.h>
#include <nds/dma.h>
```

## Data Structures

struct [bg\\_attribute](#)  
register overlay for background attribute registers [More...](#)

struct [bg\\_scroll](#)  
register overlay for scroll registers [More...](#)

struct [bg\\_transform](#)  
register overlay for affine matrix registers [More...](#)

## Defines

#define [BACKGROUND](#) (\*(([bg\\_attribute](#) \*)0x04000008))  
Overlay for main screen background attributes. Setting the properties of this struct directly sets background registers.

#define [BACKGROUND\\_SUB](#) (\*(([bg\\_attribute](#) \*)0x04001008))  
Overlay for sub screen background attributes. Setting the properties of this struct directly sets background registers.

#define [BG\\_BMP\\_BASE](#)(base) ((base) << MAP\_BASE\_SHIFT)  
Macro to set the graphics base in background control.

#define [BG\\_BMP\\_RAM](#)(base) (([u16\\*](#))((((base)\*0x4000) + 0x06000000))  
A macro which returns a [u16\\*](#) pointer to background graphics memory ram (Main Engine)

#define [BG\\_BMP\\_RAM\\_SUB](#)(base) (([u16\\*](#))((((base)\*0x4000) + 0x06200000))  
A macro which returns a [u16\\*](#) pointer to background graphics ram (Sub Engine)

#define [BG\\_MAP\\_BASE](#)(base) ((base) << MAP\_BASE\_SHIFT)  
Macro to set the map base in background control.

#define [BG\\_MAP\\_RAM](#)(base) (([u16\\*](#))((((base)\*0x800) + 0x06000000))  
A macro which returns a [u16\\*](#) pointer to background map ram (Main Engine)

#define [BG\\_MAP\\_RAM\\_SUB](#)(base) (([u16\\*](#))((((base)\*0x800) + 0x06200000))  
A macro which returns a [u16\\*](#) pointer to background map ram (Sub Engine)

#define [BG\\_OFFSET](#) (([bg\\_scroll](#) \*)0x04000010))  
Overlay for main screen background scroll registers. Setting the properties of this struct directly sets background registers.

#define [BG\\_OFFSET\\_SUB](#) (([bg\\_scroll](#) \*)0x04001010))

Overlay for sub screen background scroll registers. Setting the properties of this struct directly sets background registers.

```
#define BG_PRIORITY(n) (n)
    Macro to set the priority in background control.
#define BG_TILE_BASE(base) ((base) << TILE_BASE_SHIFT)
    Macro to set the tile base in background control.
#define BG_TILE_RAM(base) ((u16*)((base)*0x4000 + 0x06000000))
    A macro which returns a u16* pointer to background tile ram (Main Engine)
#define BG_TILE_RAM_SUB(base) ((u16*)((base)*0x4000 + 0x06200000))
    A macro which returns a u16* pointer to background tile ram (Sub Engine)
#define BGCTRL ( (vu16*)0x4000008)
    Access to all Main screen background control registers via: BGCTRL[x]
    GBATEK Reference
#define BGCTRL_SUB ( (vu16*)0x4001008)
    Access to all Sub screen background control registers via: BGCTRL[x]
    GBATEK Reference
#define MAP_BASE_SHIFT 8
    The shift to apply to map base when storing it in a background control register.
#define REG_BG0CNT (*(vu16*)0x4000008)
    Background 0 Control register (main engine) GBATEK Reference
#define REG_BG0CNT_SUB (*(vu16*)0x4001008)
    Background 0 Control register (sub engine) GBATEK Reference
#define REG_BG0HOFs (*(vu16*)0x4000010)
    Background 0 horizontal scroll register (main engine)
#define REG_BG0HOFs_SUB (*(vu16*)0x4001010)
    Background 0 horizontal scroll register (sub engine)
#define REG_BG0VOFS (*(vu16*)0x4000012)
    Background 0 vertical scroll register (main engine)
#define REG_BG0VOFS_SUB (*(vu16*)0x4001012)
    Background 0 vertical scroll register (sub engine)
#define REG_BG1CNT (*(vu16*)0x400000A)
    Background 1 Control register (main engine) GBATEK Reference
#define REG_BG1CNT_SUB (*(vu16*)0x400100A)
    Background 1 Control register (sub engine) GBATEK Reference
#define REG_BG1HOFs (*(vu16*)0x4000014)
    Background 1 horizontal scroll register (main engine)
#define REG_BG1HOFs_SUB (*(vu16*)0x4001014)
    Background 1 horizontal scroll register (sub engine)
#define REG_BG1VOFS (*(vu16*)0x4000016)
    Background 1 vertical scroll register (main engine)
#define REG_BG1VOFS_SUB (*(vu16*)0x4001016)
    Background 1 vertical scroll register (sub engine)
#define REG_BG2CNT (*(vu16*)0x400000C)
```



Background 2 Control register (main engine) [GBATEK Reference](#)  
#define [REG\\_BG2CNT\\_SUB](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x400100C)  
Background 2 Control register (sub engine) [GBATEK Reference](#)  
#define [REG\\_BG2HOFS](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x4000018)  
Background 2 horizontal scroll register (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2HOFS\\_SUB](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x4001018)  
Background 2 horizontal scroll register (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PA](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4000020)  
Background 2 Affine transform (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PA\\_SUB](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4001020)  
Background 2 Affine transform (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PB](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4000022)  
Background 2 Affine transform (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PB\\_SUB](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4001022)  
Background 2 Affine transform (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PC](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4000024)  
Background 2 Affine transform (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PC\\_SUB](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4001024)  
Background 2 Affine transform (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PD](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4000026)  
Background 2 Affine transform (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2PD\\_SUB](#) (\*(vs16\*)0x4001026)  
Background 2 Affine transform (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2VOFS](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x400001A)  
Background 2 vertical scroll register (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2VOFS\\_SUB](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x400101A)  
Background 2 vertical scroll register (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2X](#) (\*(vs32\*)0x4000028)  
Background 2 Screen Offset (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2X\\_SUB](#) (\*(vs32\*)0x4001028)  
Background 2 Screen Offset (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2Y](#) (\*(vs32\*)0x400002C)  
Background 2 Screen Offset (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG2Y\\_SUB](#) (\*(vs32\*)0x400102C)  
Background 2 Screen Offset (sub engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG3CNT](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x400000E)  
Background 3 Control register (main engine) [GBATEK Reference](#)  
#define [REG\\_BG3CNT\\_SUB](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x400100E)  
Background 3 Control register (sub engine) [GBATEK Reference](#)  
#define [REG\\_BG3HOFS](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x400001C)  
Background 3 horizontal scroll register (main engine)  
#define [REG\\_BG3HOFS\\_SUB](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x400101C)  
Background 3 horizontal scroll register (sub engine)



```

#define REG_BG3PA (*(vs16*)0x4000030)
    Background 3 Affine transform (main engine)
#define REG_BG3PA_SUB (*(vs16*)0x4001030)
    Background 3 Affine transform (sub engine)
#define REG_BG3PB (*(vs16*)0x4000032)
    Background 3 Affine transform (main engine)
#define REG_BG3PB_SUB (*(vs16*)0x4001032)
    Background 3 Affine transform (sub engine)
#define REG_BG3PC (*(vs16*)0x4000034)
    Background 3 Affine transform (main engine)
#define REG_BG3PC_SUB (*(vs16*)0x4001034)
    Background 3 Affine transform (sub engine)
#define REG_BG3PD (*(vs16*)0x4000036)
    Background 3 Affine transform (main engine)
#define REG_BG3PD_SUB (*(vs16*)0x4001036)
    Background 3 Affine transform (sub engine)
#define REG_BG3VOFS (*(vu16*)0x400001E)
    Background 3 vertical scroll register (main engine)
#define REG_BG3VOFS_SUB (*(vu16*)0x400101E)
    Background 3 vertical scroll register (sub engine)
#define REG_BG3X (*(vs32*)0x4000038)
    Background 3 Screen Offset (main engine)
#define REG_BG3X_SUB (*(vs32*)0x4001038)
    Background 3 Screen Offset (sub engine)
#define REG_BG3Y (*(vs32*)0x400003C)
    Background 3 Screen Offset (main engine)
#define REG_BG3Y_SUB (*(vs32*)0x400103C)
    Background 3 Screen Offset (sub engine)
#define TILE_BASE_SHIFT 2
    The shift to apply to tile base when storing it in a background control
    register.
#define TILE_FLIP_H BIT(10)
    The horizontal flip bit for a 16 bit tile index.
#define TILE_FLIP_V BIT(11)
    The vertical flip bit for a 16 bit tile index.
#define TILE_PALETTE(n) ((n)<<12)
    Macro to set the palette entry of a 16 bit tile index.

```

## Typedefs

typedef struct

[bg\\_attribute](#) [bg\\_attribute](#)

register overlay for background attribute registers

typedef struct [bg\\_scroll](#)

[bg\\_scroll](#)

register overlay for scroll registers

typedef struct

[bg\\_transform](#) [bg\\_transform](#)

register overlay for affine matrix registers

## Enumerations

```
enum BackgroundControl {  
    BG\_32x32 = (0 << 14),  
    BG\_64x32 = (1 << 14),  
    BG\_32x64 = (2 << 14),  
    BG\_64x64 = (3 << 14),  
    BG\_RS\_16x16 = (0 << 14),  
    BG\_RS\_32x32 = (1 << 14),  
    BG\_RS\_64x64 = (2 << 14),  
    BG\_RS\_128x128 = (3 << 14),  
    BG\_BMP8\_128x128 = ((0 << 14) | BIT(7)),  
    BG\_BMP8\_256x256 = ((1 << 14) | BIT(7)),  
    BG\_BMP8\_512x256 = ((2 << 14) | BIT(7)),  
    BG\_BMP8\_512x512 = ((3 << 14) | BIT(7)),  
    BG\_BMP8\_1024x512 = BIT(14),  
    BG\_BMP8\_512x1024 = 0,  
    BG\_BMP16\_128x128 = ((0 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2)),  
    BG\_BMP16\_256x256 = ((1 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2)),  
    BG\_BMP16\_512x256 = ((2 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2)),  
    BG\_BMP16\_512x512 = ((3 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2)),  
    BG\_MOSAIC\_ON = (BIT(6)),  
    BG\_MOSAIC\_OFF = (0),  
    BG\_PRIORITY\_0 = (0),  
    BG\_PRIORITY\_1 = (1),  
    BG\_PRIORITY\_2 = (2),  
    BG\_PRIORITY\_3 = (3),  
    BG\_WRAP\_OFF = (0),  
    BG\_WRAP\_ON = (1 << 13),  
    BG\_PALETTE\_SLOT0 = 0,  
    BG\_PALETTE\_SLOT1 = 0,  
    BG\_PALETTE\_SLOT2 = BIT(13),  
    BG\_PALETTE\_SLOT3 = BIT(13),  
    BG\_COLOR\_256 = 0x80,  
    BG\_COLOR\_16 = 0x00  
}
```

Bit defines for the background control registers.

[More...](#)

```
enum BgSize {  
    BgSize\_R\_128x128 = (0 << 14),  
    BgSize\_R\_256x256 = (1 << 14),  
    BgSize\_R\_512x512 = (2 << 14),  
    BgSize\_R\_1024x1024 = (3 << 14),  
    BgSize\_T\_256x256 = (0 << 14) | (1 << 16),  
}
```

```

BgSize_T_512x256 = (1 << 14) | (1 << 16),
BgSize_T_256x512 = (2 << 14) | (1 << 16),
BgSize_T_512x512 = (3 << 14) | (1 << 16),
BgSize_ER_128x128 = (0 << 14) | (2 << 16),
BgSize_ER_256x256 = (1 << 14) | (2 << 16),
BgSize_ER_512x512 = (2 << 14) | (2 << 16),
BgSize_ER_1024x1024 = (3 << 14) | (2 << 16),
BgSize_B8_128x128 = ((0 << 14) | BIT(7) | (3 << 16)),
BgSize_B8_256x256 = ((1 << 14) | BIT(7) | (3 << 16)),
BgSize_B8_512x256 = ((2 << 14) | BIT(7) | (3 << 16)),
BgSize_B8_512x512 = ((3 << 14) | BIT(7) | (3 << 16)),
BgSize_B8_1024x512 = (1 << 14) | (3 << 16),
BgSize_B8_512x1024 = (0) | (3 << 16),
BgSize_B16_128x128 = ((0 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2) | (4 << 16)),
BgSize_B16_256x256 = ((1 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2) | (4 << 16)),
BgSize_B16_512x256 = ((2 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2) | (4 << 16)),
BgSize_B16_512x512 = ((3 << 14) | BIT(7) | BIT(2) | (4 << 16))
}

```

Allowed background Sizes The lower 16 bits of these defines can be used directly to set the background control register bits.

[More...](#)

```

enum BgType {
    BgType_Text8bpp,
    BgType_Text4bpp,
    BgType_Rotation,
    BgType_ExRotation,
    BgType_Bmp8,
    BgType_Bmp16
}

```

Allowed background types, used in bgInit and bgInitSub.

[More...](#)

## Functions

```

static void bgClearControlBits (int id, u16 bits)
    Clears the specified bits from the backgrounds control register.

static u16 * bgGetGfxPtr (int id)
    Gets a pointer to the background graphics.

static int bgGetMapBase (int id)
    Gets the current map base for the supplied background.

static u16 * bgGetMapPtr (int id)
    Gets a pointer to the background map.

static int bgGetPriority (int id)
    Gets the background priority.

static int bgGetTileBase (int id)
    Gets the background tile base.

static void bgHide (int id)

```

Hides the current background via the display control register.

static int [bgInit](#) (int layer, [BgType](#) type, [BgSize](#) size, int mapBase, int tileBase)

Initializes a background on the main display Sets up background control register with specified settings and defaults to 256 color mode for tiled backgrounds. Sets the rotation/scale attributes for rot/ex rot backgrounds to 1:1 scale and 0 angle of rotation.

static int [bgInitSub](#) (int layer, [BgType](#) type, [BgSize](#) size, int mapBase, int tileBase)

Initializes a background on the sub display Sets up background control register with specified settings and defaults to 256 color mode for tiled backgrounds. Sets the rotation/scale attributes for rot/ex rot backgrounds to 1:1 scale and 0 angle of rotation.

static void [bgMosaicDisable](#) (int id)

Disables mosaic on the specified background.

static void [bgMosaicEnable](#) (int id)

Enables mosaic on the specified background.

static void [bgRotate](#) (int id, int angle)

Rotates the background counter clockwise by the specified angle. (this rotation is cumulative)

static void [bgScroll](#) (int id, int dx, int dy)

Scrolls the background by the specified relative values.

static void [bgScrollf](#) (int id, [s32](#) dx, [s32](#) dy)

Scrolls the background by the specified relative values (fixed point)

static void [bgSet](#) (int id, int angle, [s32](#) sx, [s32](#) sy, [s32](#) scrollX, [s32](#) scrollY, [s32](#) rotCenterX, [s32](#) rotCenterY)

Sets the rotation and scale of the background and update background control registers.

static void [bgSetAffineMatrixScroll](#) (int id, int hdx, int vdx, int hdy, int vdy, int scrollx, int scrolly)

directly sets the affine matrix and scroll registers of a background.

static void [bgSetCenter](#) (int id, int x, int y)

Sets the center of rotation for the supplied background.

static void [bgSetCenterf](#) (int id, [s32](#) x, [s32](#) y)

Sets the center of rotation for the supplied background (fixed point)

static [vuint16](#)

\* [bgSetControlBits](#) (int id, [u16](#) bits)

allows direct access to background control for the chosen layer, returns a pointer to the current control bits

static void [bgSetMapBase](#) (int id, unsigned int base)

Sets the background map base.

static void [bgSetMosaic](#) (unsigned int dx, unsigned int dy)

Sets the horizontal and vertical mosaic values for all backgrounds.

static void [bgSetMosaicSub](#) (unsigned int dx, unsigned int dy)

Sets the horizontal and vertical mosaic values for all backgrounds (Sub Display)

static void [bgSetPriority](#) (int id, unsigned int priority)

Sets the background priority.

static void [bgSetRotate](#) (int id, int angle)  
Sets the rotation angle of the specified background and updates the transform matrix.

static void [bgSetRotateScale](#) (int id, int angle, [s32](#) sx, [s32](#) sy)  
Sets the rotation and scale of the background and update background control registers.

static void [bgSetScale](#) (int id, [s32](#) sx, [s32](#) sy)  
Sets the scale of the specified background.

static void [bgSetScroll](#) (int id, int x, int y)  
Sets the scroll hardware to the specified location.

static void [bgSetScrollf](#) (int id, [s32](#) x, [s32](#) y)  
Sets the scroll hardware to the specified location (fixed point)

static void [bgSetTileBase](#) (int id, unsigned int base)  
Sets the background map base.

static void [bgShow](#) (int id)  
Shows the current background via the display control register.

void [bgUpdate](#) (void)  
Must be called once per frame to update scroll/scale/and rotation of backgrounds.

static void [bgWrapOff](#) (int id)  
turns wrap off for a background. has no effect on text backgrounds, which are always wrapped.

static void [bgWrapOn](#) (int id)  
turns wrap on for a background. has no effect on text backgrounds, which are always wrapped.

---

## Detailed Description

nds background defines and functionality.

Background control is provided via an API or Direct register access. Usually these methods can be mixed. However, scrolling, scaling, and rotation will have unexpected results if API and Direct Register access is mixed. Effort is being directed at ensuring the API can access all hardware features without limitation.

- [API Components](#)
- [Register Access Components](#)

The DS contains two separate hardware 2D cores responsible for rendering 2D backgrounds. The definitions below outline the libnds api for utilizing these backgrounds. The background engine provides basic initialization and management of the 8 2D backgrounds available on the DS. Other than initialization and hardware limitations background control is identical on both main and sub screens. The following modes of operation are allowed:

Main 2D engine

Mode	BG0	BG1	BG2	BG3
0	T	T	T	T
1	T	T	T	R
2	T	T	R	R
3	T	T	T	E
4	T	T	R	E
5	T	T	E	E
6		L		

T = Text  
R = Rotation  
E = Extended Rotation  
L = Large Bitmap background

Sub 2D engine

Mode	BG0	BG1	BG2	BG3
0	T	T	T	T
1	T	T	T	R
2	T	T	R	R
3	T	T	T	E
4	T	T	R	E
5	T	T	E	E

On the main engine BG0 can be uses as a 3D rendering surface.

---

# sprite.h File Reference

nds sprite functionality. [More...](#)

```
#include "nds/ndstypes.h"
#include "nds/arm9/video.h"
#include "nds/memory.h"
#include "nds/system.h"
```

## Data Structures

struct [OamState](#)

Holds the state for a 2D sprite engine. [More...](#)

union [SpriteEntry](#)

A bitfield of sprite attribute goodness...ugly to look at but not so bad to use. [More...](#)

struct [SpriteRotation](#)

A sprite rotation entry. [More...](#)

## Defines

#define [MATRIX\\_COUNT](#) 32

maximum number of affine matrices per engine available.

#define [SPRITE\\_COUNT](#) 128

maximum number of sprites per engine available.

## Typedefs

typedef struct

[OamState](#) [OamState](#)

Holds the state for a 2D sprite engine.

typedef union

[SpriteEntry](#) [SpriteEntry](#)

A bitfield of sprite attribute goodness...ugly to look at but not so bad to use.

typedef struct

[SpriteRotation](#) [SpriteRotation](#)

A sprite rotation entry.

## Enumerations

```
enum ObjBlendMode {
    OBJMODE\_NORMAL,
    OBJMODE\_BLENDED,
    OBJMODE\_WINDOWED,
    OBJMODE\_BITMAP
}
```

The blending mode of the sprite.

[More...](#)

```
enum ObjColMode {  
    OBJCOLOR\_16,  
    OBJCOLOR\_256  
}
```

The color mode of the sprite.

[More...](#)

```
enum ObjPriority {  
    OBJPRIORITY\_0,  
    OBJPRIORITY\_1,  
    OBJPRIORITY\_2,  
    OBJPRIORITY\_3  
}
```

The priority of the sprite.

[More...](#)

```
enum ObjShape {  
    OBJSHAPE\_SQUARE,  
    OBJSHAPE\_WIDE,  
    OBJSHAPE\_TALL,  
    OBJSHAPE\_FORBIDDEN  
}
```

The shape of the sprite.

[More...](#)

```
enum ObjSize {  
    OBJSIZE\_8,  
    OBJSIZE\_16,  
    OBJSIZE\_32,  
    OBJSIZE\_64  
}
```

The size of the sprite.

[More...](#)

```
enum SpriteColorFormat {  
    SpriteColorFormat\_16Color = OBJCOLOR_16,  
    SpriteColorFormat\_256Color = OBJCOLOR_256,  
    SpriteColorFormat\_Bmp = OBJMODE_BITMAP  
}
```

Color formats for sprite graphics.

[More...](#)

```
enum SpriteMapping {  
    SpriteMapping\_1D\_32 = DISPLAY_SPR_1D |  
    DISPLAY_SPR_1D_SIZE_32 | (0 << 28) | 0,  
    SpriteMapping\_1D\_64 = DISPLAY_SPR_1D |  
    DISPLAY_SPR_1D_SIZE_64 | (1 << 28) | 1,  
}
```



```

SpriteMapping\_1D\_128 = DISPLAY_SPR_1D |
DISPLAY_SPR_1D_SIZE_128 | (2 << 28) | 2,
SpriteMapping\_1D\_256 = DISPLAY_SPR_1D |
DISPLAY_SPR_1D_SIZE_256 | (3 << 28) | 3,
SpriteMapping\_2D = DISPLAY_SPR_2D | (4 << 28),
SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_1D\_128 = DISPLAY_SPR_1D |
DISPLAY_SPR_1D_SIZE_128 | DISPLAY_SPR_1D_BMP |
DISPLAY_SPR_1D_BMP_SIZE_128 | (5 << 28) | 2,
SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_1D\_256 = DISPLAY_SPR_1D |
DISPLAY_SPR_1D_SIZE_256 | DISPLAY_SPR_1D_BMP |
DISPLAY_SPR_1D_BMP_SIZE_256 | (6 << 28) | 3,
SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_2D\_128 = DISPLAY_SPR_2D |
DISPLAY_SPR_2D_BMP_128 | (7 << 28) | 2,
SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_2D\_256 = DISPLAY_SPR_2D |
DISPLAY_SPR_2D_BMP_256 | (8 << 28) | 3
}

```

Graphics memory layout options.

[More...](#)

```

enum SpriteSize {
SpriteSize\_8x8 = (OBJSIZE_8 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_SQUARE <<
12) | (8*8>>5),
SpriteSize\_16x16 = (OBJSIZE_16 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_SQUARE
<< 12) | (16*16>>5),
SpriteSize\_32x32 = (OBJSIZE_32 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_SQUARE
<< 12) | (32*32>>5),
SpriteSize\_64x64 = (OBJSIZE_64 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_SQUARE
<< 12) | (64*64>>5),
SpriteSize\_16x8 = (OBJSIZE_8 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_WIDE << 12) |
(16*8>>5),
SpriteSize\_32x8 = (OBJSIZE_16 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_WIDE << 12)
| (32*8>>5),
SpriteSize\_32x16 = (OBJSIZE_32 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_WIDE <<
12) | (32*16>>5),
SpriteSize\_64x32 = (OBJSIZE_64 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_WIDE <<
12) | (64*32>>5),
SpriteSize\_8x16 = (OBJSIZE_8 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_TALL << 12) |
(8*16>>5),
SpriteSize\_8x32 = (OBJSIZE_16 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_TALL << 12) |
(8*32>>5),
SpriteSize\_16x32 = (OBJSIZE_32 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_TALL <<
12) | (16*32>>5),
SpriteSize\_32x64 = (OBJSIZE_64 << 14) | (OBJSHAPE_TALL <<
12) | (32*64>>5)
}

```

Enumerates all sizes supported by the 2D engine.

[More...](#)

## Functions

static void [oamAffineTransformation](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, int rotId, int hdx, int hdy, int vdx, int vdy)  
allows you to directly sets the affine transformation matrix.

[u16](#) \* [oamAllocateGfx](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, [SpriteSize](#) size, [SpriteColorFormat](#) colorFormat)  
Allocates graphics memory for the supplied sprite attributes.

void [oamClear](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, int start, int count)  
Hides the sprites in the supplied range: if count is zero all 128 sprites will be hidden.

static void [oamClearSprite](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, int index)  
Hides a single sprite.

int [oamCountFragments](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam)  
determines the number of fragments in the allocation engine

void [oamDisable](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam)  
Disables sprite rendering.

void [oamEnable](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam)  
Enables sprite rendering.

void [oamFreeGfx](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, const void \*gfxOffset)  
free vram memory obtained with oamAllocateGfx.

[u16](#) \* [oamGetGfxPtr](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, int gfxOffsetIndex)  
translates an oam offset into a video ram address

void [oamInit](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, [SpriteMapping](#) mapping, [bool](#) extPalette)  
Initializes the 2D sprite engine In order to mix tiled and bitmap sprites use SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_1D\_128 or SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_1D\_256.

void [oamRotateScale](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, int rotId, int angle, int sx, int sy)  
sets the specified rotation scale entry

void [oamSet](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam, int id, int x, int y, int priority, int palette\_alpha, [SpriteSize](#) size, [SpriteColorFormat](#) format, const void \*gfxOffset, int affineIndex, [bool](#) sizeDouble, [bool](#) hide, [bool](#) hflip, [bool](#) vflip, [bool](#) mosaic)  
sets an oam entry to the supplied values

static void [oamSetMosaic](#) (unsigned int dx, unsigned int dy)  
sets engine A global sprite mosaic

static void [oamSetMosaicSub](#) (unsigned int dx, unsigned int dy)  
sets engine B global sprite mosaic

void [oamUpdate](#) ([OamState](#) \*oam)  
causes oam memory to be updated...must be called during vblank if using oam api

## Variables

[OamState](#) [oamMain](#)

oamMain an object representing the main 2D engine

[OamState](#) [oamSub](#)

oamSub an object representing the sub 2D engine

---

## Detailed Description

nds sprite functionality.

---

## Typedef Documentation

typedef struct [OamState](#) [OamState](#)

Holds the state for a 2D sprite engine.

There are two of these objects, oamMain and oamSub and these must be passed in to all oam functions.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [ObjBlendMode](#)

The blending mode of the sprite.

### Enumerator:

- `OBJMODE_NORMAL` No special mode is on - Normal sprite state.
- `OBJMODE_BLENDED` Color blending is on - Sprite can use HW blending features.
- `OBJMODE_WINDOWED` Sprite can be seen only inside the sprite window.
- `OBJMODE_BITMAP` Sprite is not using tiles - per pixel image data.

enum [ObjColMode](#)

The color mode of the sprite.

### Enumerator:

- `OBJCOLOR_16` sprite has 16 colors.
- `OBJCOLOR_256` sprite has 256 colors.

enum [ObjPriority](#)

The priority of the sprite.

### Enumerator:

- `OBJPRIORITY_0` sprite priority level 0 - highest.
- `OBJPRIORITY_1` sprite priority level 1.
- `OBJPRIORITY_2` sprite priority level 2.
- `OBJPRIORITY_3` sprite priority level 3 - lowest.

enum [ObjShape](#)

The shape of the sprite.

**Enumerator:**

- OBJSHAPE\_SQUARE*      Sprite shape is NxN (Height == Width).
- OBJSHAPE\_WIDE*        Sprite shape is NxM with N > M (Height < Width).
- OBJSHAPE\_TALL*        Sprite shape is NxM with N < M (Height > Width).
- OBJSHAPE\_FORBIDDEN*   Sprite shape is undefined.

enum [ObjSize](#)

The size of the sprite.

**Enumerator:**

- OBJSIZE\_8*    Major sprite size is 8px.
- OBJSIZE\_16*   Major sprite size is 16px.
- OBJSIZE\_32*   Major sprite size is 32px.
- OBJSIZE\_64*   Major sprite size is 64px.

enum [SpriteColorFormat](#)

Color formats for sprite graphics.

**Enumerator:**

- SpriteColorFormat\_16Color*   16 colors per sprite
- SpriteColorFormat\_256Color*   256 colors per sprite
- SpriteColorFormat\_Bmp*        16-bit sprites

enum [SpriteMapping](#)

Graphics memory layout options.

**Enumerator:**

- SpriteMapping\_1D\_32*        1D tile mapping 32 byte boundary between offset
- SpriteMapping\_1D\_64*        1D tile mapping 64 byte boundary between offset
- SpriteMapping\_1D\_128*       1D tile mapping 128 byte boundary between offset
- SpriteMapping\_1D\_256*       1D tile mapping 256 byte boundary between offset
- SpriteMapping\_2D*            2D tile mapping 32 byte boundary between offset
- SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_1D\_128*   1D bitmap mapping 128 byte boundary between offset
- SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_1D\_256*   1D bitmap mapping 256 byte boundary between offset
- SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_2D\_128*   2D bitmap mapping 128 pixels wide bitmap
- SpriteMapping\_Bmp\_2D\_256*   2D bitmap mapping 256 pixels wide bitmap

enum [SpriteSize](#)

Enumerates all sizes supported by the 2D engine.

**Enumerator:**

*SpriteSize\_8x8*    8x8

*SpriteSize\_16x16* 16x16

*SpriteSize\_32x32* 32x32

*SpriteSize\_64x64* 64x64

*SpriteSize\_16x8*   16x8

*SpriteSize\_32x8*   32x8

*SpriteSize\_32x16* 32x16

*SpriteSize\_64x32* 64x32

*SpriteSize\_8x16*   8x16

*SpriteSize\_8x32*   8x32

*SpriteSize\_16x32* 16x32

*SpriteSize\_32x64* 32x64

---

## Function Documentation

```
static void oamAffineTransformation ( OamState * oam,  
                                     int          rotld,  
                                     int          hdx,  
                                     int          hdy,  
                                     int          vdx,  
                                     int          vdy  
                                     )          [inline, static]
```

allows you to directly sets the affine transformation matrix.

with this, you have more freedom to set the matrix, but it might be more difficult to use if you're not used to affine transformation matrix. this will erase the previous matrix stored at rotld.

**Parameters:**

oam The oam engine, must be &oamMain or &oamSub.

rotld The id of the rotscale item you want to change, must be 0-31.

hdx The change in x per horizontal pixel.

hdy The change in y per horizontal pixel.

vdx The change in x per vertical pixel.

vdy The change in y per vertical pixel.

```
u16* oamAllocateGfx ( OamState *      oam,  
                      SpriteSize      size,  
                      SpriteColorFormat colorFormat  
                      )
```

Allocates graphics memory for the supplied sprite attributes.

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

size the size of the sprite to allocate

colorFormat the color format of the sprite

**Returns:**

the address in vram of the allocated sprite

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#).

```
void oamClear ( OamState * oam,  
               int         start,  
               int         count  
               )
```

Hides the sprites in the supplied range: if count is zero all 128 sprites will be hidden.

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

start The first index to clear

count The number of sprites to clear

```
static void oamClearSprite ( OamState * oam,  
                            int         index  
                            ) [inline, static]
```

Hides a single sprite.

**Parameters:**

oam the oam engine, must be &oamMain or &oamSub.

index the index of the sprite, must be 0-127.

```
int oamCountFragments ( OamState * oam )
```

determines the number of fragments in the allocation engine

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

**Returns:**

the number of fragments.

```
void oamDisable ( OamState * oam )
```

Disables sprite rendering.

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

```
void oamEnable ( OamState * oam )
```

Enables sprite rendering.

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

```
void oamFreeGfx ( OamState * oam,
                  const void * gfxOffset
                  )
```

free vram memory obtained with oamAllocateGfx.

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

gfxOffset a vram offset obtained from oamAllocateGfx

**Examples:**

[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#).

```
u16* oamGetGfxPtr ( OamState * oam,
                    int          gfxOffsetIndex
                    )
```

translates an oam offset into a video ram address

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

gfxOffsetIndex the index to compute

**Returns:**

the address in vram corresponding to the supplied offset

```
void oamInit ( OamState * oam,
               SpriteMapping mapping,
               bool          extPalette
               )
```

Initializes the 2D sprite engine In order to mix tiled and bitmap sprites use `SpriteMapping_Bmp_1D_128` or `SpriteMapping_Bmp_1D_256`.

This will set mapping for both to 1D and give same sized boundaries so the sprite gfx allocation will function. VBlank IRQ must be enabled for this function to work.

**Parameters:**

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

mapping the mapping mode

extPalette if true the engine sets up extended palettes for 8bpp sprites

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c](#),

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#).

```
void oamRotateScale ( OamState * oam,  
                     int      rotId,  
                     int      angle,  
                     int      sx,  
                     int      sy  
                     )
```

sets the specified rotation scale entry

**Parameters:**

oam    must be: &oamMain or &oamSub  
rotId   the rotation entry to set  
angle   the ccw angle to rotate [-32768 - 32767]  
sx      the inverse scale factor in the x direction  
sy      the inverse scale factor in the y direction

**Examples:**

[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#).

```
void oamSet ( OamState * oam,  
             int      id,  
             int      x,  
             int      y,  
             int      priority,  
             int      palette_alpha,  
             SpriteSize size,  
             SpriteColorFormat format,  
             const void * gfxOffset,  
             int      affineIndex,  
             bool      sizeDouble,  
             bool      hide,  
             bool      hflip,  
             bool      vflip,  
             bool      mosaic  
             )
```

sets an oam entry to the supplied values

**Parameters:**

oam            must be: &oamMain or &oamSub



id	the oam number to be set [0 - 127]
x	the x location of the sprite in pixels
y	the y location of the sprite in pixels
priority	The sprite priority (0 to 3)
palette_alpha	the palette number for 4bpp and 8bpp (extended palette mode), or the alpha value for bitmap sprites (bitmap sprites must specify a value > 0 to display) [0-15]
size	the size of the sprite
format	the color format of the sprite
gfxOffset	the video memory address of the sprite graphics (not an offset)
affineIndex	affine index to use (if < 0 or > 31 the sprite will be unrotated)
sizeDouble	if affineIndex >= 0 this will be used to double the sprite size for rotation
hide	if non zero (true) the sprite will be hidden
vflip	flip the sprite vertically
hflip	flip the sprite horizontally
mosaic	if true mosaic will be applied to the sprite

### Examples:

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#).

```
static void oamSetMosaic ( unsigned int  dx,
                          unsigned int  dy
                          ) [inline, static]
```

sets engine A global sprite mosaic

### Parameters:

dx (0-15) horizontal mosaic value

dy (0-15) horizontal mosaic value

```
static void oamSetMosaicSub ( unsigned int  dx,
                              unsigned int  dy
                              ) [inline, static]
```

sets engine B global sprite mosaic

### Parameters:

dx (0-15) horizontal mosaic value

dy (0-15) horizontal mosaic value

```
void oamUpdate ( OamState * oam )
```

causes oam memory to be updated...must be called during vblank if using oam api

### Parameters:

oam must be: &oamMain or &oamSub

### Examples:

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#).

---

## 3D engine API

# videoGL.h File Reference

OpenGL (ish) interface to DS 3D hardware. [More...](#)

```
#include "nds/dma.h"
#include "nds/ndstypes.h"
#include "nds/arm9/sassert.h"
#include "nds/arm9/video.h"
#include "nds/arm9/cache.h"
#include "nds/arm9/trig_lut.h"
#include "nds/arm9/math.h"
#include "nds/arm9/dynamicArray.h"
```

## Data Structures

- struct [GLvector](#)  
Holds a Vector  
related functions: [glScalev\(\)](#), [glTranslatev\(\)](#) [More...](#)
- struct [m3x3](#)  
Holds a Matrix of 3x3. [More...](#)
- struct [m4x3](#)  
Holds a Matrix of 4x3. [More...](#)
- struct [m4x4](#)  
Holds a Matrix of 4x4. [More...](#)

## Defines

- #define [f32tofloat](#)(n) (((float)(n)) / (float)(1<<12))  
convert f32 to float
- #define [f32toint](#)(n) ((n) >> 12)  
convert f32 to int
- #define [f32tot16](#)(n) (([t16](#))(n >> 8))  
convert f32 to t16
- #define [f32tov10](#)(n) (([v10](#))(n >> 3))  
convert f32 to v10
- #define [f32tov16](#)(n) (n)  
f32 to v16
- #define [FIFO\\_BEGIN](#) REG2ID(GFX\_BEGIN)  
packed command that starts a polygon vertex list  
[GBATEK](#)  
<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices>
- #define [FIFO\\_CLEAR\\_COLOR](#) REG2ID(GFX\_CLEAR\_COLOR)  
packed command for clear color of the rear plane  
[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3drearplane>

```

#define FIFO\_CLEAR\_DEPTH REG2ID(GFX_CLEAR_DEPTH)
    sets depth of the rear plane
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3drearplane
#define FIFO\_COLOR REG2ID(GFX_COLOR)
    packed command for vertex color directly
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes
#define FIFO\_COMMAND\_PACK(c1, c2, c3, c4) (((c4) << 24) | ((c3) << 16) | ((c2) << 8) | (c1))
    packs four packed commands into a 32bit command for sending to the GFX FIFO
#define FIFO\_DIFFUSE\_AMBIENT REG2ID(GFX_DIFFUSE_AMBIENT)
    packed command for setting diffuse and ambient material properties for the following vertices
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters
#define FIFO\_END REG2ID(GFX_END)
    packed command that has no discernable effect, it's probably best to never use it since it bloats the size of the list.
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices
#define FIFO\_FLUSH REG2ID(GFX_FLUSH)
    packed command that has the same effect as swiWaitForVBlank\(\)
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol
#define FIFO\_LIGHT\_COLOR REG2ID(GFX_LIGHT_COLOR)
    packed command for color for a light
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters
#define FIFO\_LIGHT\_VECTOR REG2ID(GFX_LIGHT_VECTOR)
    packed command for direction of a light source
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters
#define FIFO\_NOP REG2ID(GFX_FIFO)
    packed command for nothing, just here to pad your command lists
#define FIFO\_NORMAL REG2ID(GFX_NORMAL)
    packed command for normal for following vertices
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters
#define FIFO\_PAL\_FORMAT REG2ID(GFX_PAL_FORMAT)
    packed command for texture palette attributes
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes
#define FIFO\_POLY\_FORMAT REG2ID(GFX_POLY_FORMAT)
    packed command for setting polygon attributes
    GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes
#define FIFO\_SHININESS REG2ID(GFX_SHININESS)
    packed command for setting the shininess table to be used for the following vertices
    GBATEK

```

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters>

#define [FIFO\\_SPECULAR\\_EMISSION](#) REG2ID(GFX\_SPECULAR\_EMISSION)  
packed command for setting specular and emissive material properties for the following vertices  
[GBATEK](#)  
<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters>

#define [FIFO\\_STATUS](#) REG2ID(GFX\_STATUS)  
packed command for geometry engine status register  
[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dstatus>

#define [FIFO\\_TEX\\_COORD](#) REG2ID(GFX\_TEX\_COORD)  
packed command for a texture coordinate  
[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtexturecoordinates>

#define [FIFO\\_TEX\\_FORMAT](#) REG2ID(GFX\_TEX\_FORMAT)  
packed command for texture format  
[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureformats>

#define [FIFO\\_VERTEX10](#) REG2ID(GFX\_VERTEX10)  
packed command for a vertex with 3 10bit paramaters (and 2bits of padding)  
[GBATEK](#)  
<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices>

#define [FIFO\\_VERTEX16](#) REG2ID(GFX\_VERTEX16)  
packed command for a vertex with 3 16bit paramaters (and 16bits of padding)  
[GBATEK](#)  
<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices>

#define [FIFO\\_VERTEX\\_XY](#) REG2ID(GFX\_VERTEX\_XY)  
packed command for a vertex with 2 16bit paramaters (reusing current last-set vertex z value)  
[GBATEK](#)  
<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices>

#define [FIFO\\_VERTEX\\_XZ](#) REG2ID(GFX\_VERTEX\_XZ)  
packed command for a vertex with 2 16bit paramaters (reusing current last-set vertex y value)  
[GBATEK](#)  
<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices>

#define [FIFO\\_VERTEX\\_YZ](#) REG2ID(GFX\_VERTEX\_YZ)  
packed command for a vertex with 2 16bit paramaters (reusing current last-set vertex x value)  
[GBATEK](#)  
<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices>

#define [FIFO\\_VIEWPORT](#) REG2ID(GFX\_VIEWPORT)  
packed command for setting viewport  
[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

#define [floatto12d3\(n\)](#) (([fixed12d3](#))((n) \* (1 << 3)))  
convert float to fixed12d3

#define [floattof32\(n\)](#) ((int)((n) \* (1 << 12)))  
convert float to f32

#define [floattot16\(n\)](#) (([t16](#))((n) \* (1 << 4)))

```

        convert float to t16
#define floattov10(n) ((n>.998) ? 0x1FF : ((v10)((n)*(1<<9))))
        convert float to v10
#define floattov16(n) ((v16)((n) * (1 << 12)))
        convert float to v16
#define GL\_MAX\_DEPTH 0x7FFF
        the maximum value for type fixed12d3
#define intto12d3(n) ((n) << 3)
        convert int to fixed12d3
#define inttof32(n) ((n) << 12)
        convert int to f32
#define inttot16(n) ((n) << 4)
        convert int to t16
#define inttov10(n) ((n) << 9)
        convert int to v10
#define inttov16(n) ((n) << 12)
        convert int to v16
#define NORMAL\_PACK(x, y, z) (((x) & 0x3FF) | (((y) & 0x3FF) << 10) | ((z) << 20))
        Pack 3 v10 normals into a 32bit value.
#define REG2ID(r) (u8)( ( (u32)(&(r)))-0x04000400 ) >> 2 )
        converts a GFX command for use in a packed command list
#define t16toint(n) ((n) >> 4)
        convert t16 to int
#define TEXTURE\_PACK(u, v) (((u) & 0xFFFF) | ((v) << 16))
        Pack 2 t16 texture coordinate values into a 32bit value.
#define v10toint(n) ((n) >> 9)
        convert v10 to int
#define v16toint(n) ((n) >> 12)
        convert v16 to int
#define VERTEX\_PACK(x, y) (((x) & 0xFFFF) | ((y) << 16))
        Pack to v16 values into one 32bit value.

```

## Typedefs

```

typedef
uint16 fixed12d3
        Used for depth (glClearDepth, glCutoffDepth)

typedef
struct
GLvector GLvector
        Holds a Vector
        related functions: glScalev\(\), glTranslatev\(\)

typedef
struct m3x3 m3x3
        Holds a Matrix of 3x3.

```

```

typedef
struct m4x3 m4x3
    Holds a Matrix of 4x3.

typedef
struct m4x4 m4x4
    Holds a Matrix of 4x4.

typedef
unsigned
short rgb
    Holds a color value. 1bit alpha, 5bits red, 5bits green, 5bits blue.

typedef
short t16
    text coordinate 12.4 fixed point

typedef short
int v10
    normal .10 fixed point, NOT USED FOR 10bit VERTEXES!!!

typedef short
int v16
    vertex 4.12 fixed format

```

## Enumerations

```

enum DISP3DCNT\_ENUM {
    GL\_TEXTURE\_2D = (1<<0),
    GL\_TOON\_HIGHLIGHT = (1<<1),
    GL\_ALPHA\_TEST = (1<<2),
    GL\_BLEND = (1<<3),
    GL\_ANTIALIAS = (1<<4),
    GL\_OUTLINE = (1<<5),
    GL\_FOG\_ONLY\_ALPHA = (1<<6),
    GL\_FOG = (1<<7),
    GL\_COLOR\_UNDERFLOW = (1<<12),
    GL\_POLY\_OVERFLOW = (1<<13),
    GL\_CLEAR\_BMP = (1<<14)
}

```

3D Display Control Register Enums  
GBATEK <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>  
related functions: [glEnable\(\)](#), [glDisable\(\)](#), [glInit\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```

enum GL\_GET\_ENUM {
    GL\_GET\_VERTEX\_RAM\_COUNT,
    GL\_GET\_POLYGON\_RAM\_COUNT,
    GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_VECTOR,
    GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_POSITION,
    GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_PROJECTION,
    GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_CLIP,
    GL\_GET\_TEXTURE\_WIDTH,
    GL\_GET\_TEXTURE\_HEIGHT

```

}

Enums for reading stuff from the geometry engine

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3diomap>

related functions: [glGetInt\(\)](#), [glGetFixed\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```
enum GL\_GLBEGIN\_ENUM {  
    GL\_TRIANGLES = 0,  
    GL\_QUADS = 1,  
    GL\_TRIANGLE\_STRIP = 2,  
    GL\_QUAD\_STRIP = 3,  
    GL\_TRIANGLE = 0,  
    GL\_QUAD = 1  
}
```

Enums selecting polygon draw mode

[GBATEK](#)

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices>

related functions: [glBegin\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```
enum GL\_MATERIALS\_ENUM {  
    GL\_AMBIENT = 0x01,  
    GL\_DIFFUSE = 0x02,  
    GL\_AMBIENT\_AND\_DIFFUSE = 0x03,  
    GL\_SPECULAR = 0x04,  
    GL\_SHININESS = 0x08,  
    GL\_EMISSION = 0x10  
}
```

Enums for setting up materials

[GBATEK](#)

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters>

related functions: [glMaterialf\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```
enum GL\_MATRIX\_MODE\_ENUM {  
    GL\_PROJECTION = 0,  
    GL\_POSITION = 1,  
    GL\_MODELVIEW = 2,  
    GL\_TEXTURE = 3  
}
```

Enums selecting matrix mode

[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply>

related functions: [glMatrixMode\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```
enum GL\_POLY\_FORMAT\_ENUM {  
    POLY\_FORMAT\_LIGHT0 = (1<<0),  
    POLY\_FORMAT\_LIGHT1 = (1<<1),  
    POLY\_FORMAT\_LIGHT2 = (1<<2),  
    POLY\_FORMAT\_LIGHT3 = (1<<3),  
}
```



```

    POLY_MODULATION = (0<<4),
    POLY_DECAL = (1<<4),
    POLY_TOON_HIGHLIGHT = (2<<4),
    POLY_SHADOW = (3<<4),
    POLY_CULL_FRONT = (1<<6),
    POLY_CULL_BACK = (2<<6),
    POLY_CULL_NONE = (3<<6),
    POLY_FOG = (1<<15)
}

```

Enums for setting how polygons will be displayed

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes)

related functions: [glPolyFmt\(\)](#), [glInit\(\)](#), [POLY\\_ALPHA\(\)](#), [POLY\\_ID\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```

enum GL_TEXTURE_PARAM_ENUM {
    GL_TEXTURE_WRAP_S = (1 << 16),
    GL_TEXTURE_WRAP_T = (1 << 17),
    GL_TEXTURE_FLIP_S = (1 << 18),
    GL_TEXTURE_FLIP_T = (1 << 19),
    GL_TEXTURE_COLOR0_TRANSPARENT = (1<<29),
    TEXGEN_OFF = (0<<30),
    TEXGEN_TEXCOORD = (1<<30),
    TEXGEN_NORMAL = (2<<30),
    TEXGEN_POSITION = (3<<30)
}

```

Enums for texture parameters, such as texture wrapping and texture coord stuff

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes)

related functions: [glTexImage2d\(\)](#), [glTexParameter\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```

enum GL_TEXTURE_SIZE_ENUM {
    TEXTURE_SIZE_8 = 0,
    TEXTURE_SIZE_16 = 1,
    TEXTURE_SIZE_32 = 2,
    TEXTURE_SIZE_64 = 3,
    TEXTURE_SIZE_128 = 4,
    TEXTURE_SIZE_256 = 5,
    TEXTURE_SIZE_512 = 6,
    TEXTURE_SIZE_1024 = 7
}

```

Enums for size of a texture, specify one for horizontal and one for vertical

related functions: [glTexImage2d\(\)](#), [glTexParameter\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```

enum GL_TEXTURE_TYPE_ENUM {
    GL_RGB32_A3 = 1,
    GL_RGBA = 2,
    GL_RGB16 = 3,
    GL_RGB256 = 4,
    GL_COMPRESSED = 5,
}

```

```

    GL_RGB8_A5 = 6,
    GL_RGBA = 7,
    GL_RGB = 8
}

```

Enums for texture formats

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureformats](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureformats)

related functions: [glTexImage2d\(\)](#), [glTexParameter\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

```

enum GLFLUSH_ENUM {
    GL_TRANS_MANUALSORT = (1<<0),
    GL_WBUFFERING = (1<<1)
}

```

Enums for [glFlush\(\)](#)

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol)

related functions: [glEnable\(\)](#), [glDisable\(\)](#), [glInit\(\)](#)

[More...](#)

## Functions

void [glAlphaFunc](#) (int alphaThreshold)

set the minimum alpha value that will be used

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol)

void [glAssignColorTable](#) (int target, int [name](#))

[nglAssignColorTable](#) sets the active texture with a palette set with another texture

void [glBegin](#) ([GL\\_BEGIN\\_ENUM](#) mode)

Starts a polygon group.

void [glBindTexture](#) (int target, int [name](#))

[glBindTexure](#) sets the current named texture to the active texture. Target is ignored as all DS textures are 2D

void [glCallList](#) (const [u32](#) \*list)

throws a packed list of commands into the graphics FIFO via asynchronous DMA

The first 32bits is the length of the packed command list, followed by a the packed list.

If you want to do this really fast then write your own code that that does this synchronously and only flushes the cache when the list is changed

There is sometimes a problem when you pack the [GFX\\_END](#) command into a list, so don't. [GFX\\_END](#) is a dummy command and never needs called

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dgeometrycommands](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dgeometrycommands)

void [glClearColor](#) ([uint8](#) red, [uint8](#) green, [uint8](#) blue, [uint8](#) alpha)

sets the color of the rear-plane(a.k.a Clear Color/Plane)

void [glClearDepth](#) ([fixed12d3](#) depth)

reset the depth buffer to this value; generally set this to [GL\\_MAX\\_DEPTH](#).

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3drearplane](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3drearplane)

void [glClearPolyID](#) ([uint8](#) ID)

sets the polygon ID of the rear-plane(a.k.a. Clear/Color Plane), useful for antialiasing and edge coloring

void [glColor](#) ([rgb](#) color)  
Set the color for following vertices.

void [glColor3b](#) ([uint8](#) red, [uint8](#) green, [uint8](#) blue)  
Set the color for following vertices.

void [glColor3f](#) (float [r](#), float [g](#), float [b](#))  
specify a color for following vertices

void [glColorTableEXT](#) (int target, int empty1, [uint16](#) width, int empty2, int empty3, const [uint16](#) \*table)  
nglColorTableEXT loads a 15-bit color format palette into palette memory, and sets it to the currently bound texture (can be used to remove also)

void [glCutoffDepth](#) ([fixed12d3](#) wVal)  
Stop the drawing of polygons that are a certain distance from the camera.  
[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

int [glDeleteTextures](#) (int n, int \*names)  
Deletes the specified number of textures (and associated palettes)

void [glDisable](#) (int bits)  
Disables various gl states (blend, alpha test, etc..)

void [glEnable](#) (int bits)  
Enables various gl states (blend, alpha test, etc..)

void [glEnd](#) (void)  
Ends a polygon group, this seems to be a dummy function that does absolutely nothing, feel free to never use it.

void [glFlush](#) ([u32](#) mode)  
Waits for a Vblank and swaps the buffers(like swiWaitForVBlank), but lets you specify some 3D options  
[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

void [glFogColor](#) ([uint8](#) red, [uint8](#) green, [uint8](#) blue, [uint8](#) alpha)  
sets the fog color

void [glFogDensity](#) (int index, int density)  
sets the fog density at a given index

void [glFogOffset](#) (int offset)  
Sets the FOG\_OFFSET value.

void [glFogShift](#) (int shift)  
Sets the FOG\_SHIFT value.

void [glFrustum](#) (float left, float right, float bottom, float top, float near, float far)  
Specifies the viewing frustum for the projection matrix (floating point version)

void [glFrustumf32](#) (int left, int right, int bottom, int top, int near, int far)  
Specifies the viewing frustum for the projection matrix (fixed point version)

int [glGenTextures](#) (int n, int \*names)  
Creates room for the specified number of textures.

void [glGetFixed](#) (const [GL\\_GET\\_ENUM](#) param, int \*f)  
Grabs fixed format of state variables  
OpenGL's modelview matrix is handled on the DS with two matrices. The

combination of the DS's position matrix and directional vector matrix hold the data that is in OpenGL's one modelview matrix. (a.k.a. modelview = position and vector)

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3diomap>

void [glGetInt](#) ([GL\\_GET\\_ENUM](#) param, int \*i)

Grabs integer state variables from OpenGL.

[u32](#) [glGetTexParameter](#) (void)

Returns the active texture parameter (constructed from internal call to [glTexParameter](#))

void \* [glGetTexturePointer](#) (int [name](#))

returns the address allocated to the texture named by name

void [glInit](#) ()

Initializes the gl state machine (must be called once before using gl calls)

void [glLight](#) (int id, [rgb](#) color, [v10](#) x, [v10](#) y, [v10](#) z)

set a light up. Only parallel light sources are supported on the DS

[GBATEK](#)

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters>

void [glLoadIdentity](#) (void)

loads an identity matrix to the current matrix, same as [glIdentity](#)(void)

void [glLoadMatrix4x3](#) (const [m4x3](#) \*m)

Loads a 4x3 matrix into the current matrix.

void [glLoadMatrix4x4](#) (const [m4x4](#) \*m)

Loads a 4x4 matrix into the current matrix.

void [glMaterialf](#) ([GL\\_MATERIALS\\_ENUM](#) mode, [rgb](#) color)

specify the material properties to be used in rendering lit polygons

void [glMaterialShinyness](#) (void)

The DS uses a table for shininess..this generates a half-ass one.

void [glMatrixMode](#) ([GL\\_MATRIX\\_MODE\\_ENUM](#) mode)

change the current matrix mode

[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply>

void [glMultMatrix3x3](#) (const [m3x3](#) \*m)

multiplies the current matrix by m

void [glMultMatrix4x3](#) (const [m4x3](#) \*m)

multiplies the current matrix by

void [glMultMatrix4x4](#) (const [m4x4](#) \*m)

Multiplies the current matrix by m.

void [glNormal](#) ([u32](#) normal)

the normal to use for following vertices

[GBATEK](#)

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters>

void [glNormal3f](#) (float x, float y, float z)

the normal to use for following vertices

[GBATEK](#)

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters>

void [glOrtho](#) (float left, float right, float bottom, float top, float zNear, float zFar)

Multiplies the current matrix into ortho graphic mode.

void [glOrthof32](#) (int left, int right, int bottom, int top, int zNear, int zFar)  
Multiplies the current matrix into ortho graphic mode.

void [glPolyFmt](#) ([u32](#) params)  
Set the parameters for polygons rendered on the current frame  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes)

void [glPopMatrix](#) (int num)  
Pops num matrices off the stack  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack)

void [glPushMatrix](#) (void)  
Pushes the current matrix onto the stack  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack)

void [glResetMatrixStack](#) (void)  
Resets matrix stack to top level.

void [glResetTextures](#) (void)  
Resets the gl texture state freeing all texture and texture palette memory.

void [glRestoreMatrix](#) (int index)  
Restores the current matrix from a location in the stack  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack)

void [glRotatef](#) (float angle, float x, float y, float z)  
Rotate about an arbitrary axis.

void [glRotatef32](#) (float angle, int x, int y, int z)  
Rotate on an arbitrary axis.

void [glRotatef32i](#) (int angle, int x, int y, int z)  
Rotates the model view matrix by angle about the specified unit vector.

void [glRotateX](#) (float angle)  
Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle degrees about the x axis.

void [glRotateXi](#) (int angle)  
Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle about the x axis.

void [glRotateY](#) (float angle)  
Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle degrees about the y axis.

void [glRotateYi](#) (int angle)  
Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle about the y axis.

void [glRotateZ](#) (float angle)  
Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle degrees about the z axis.

void [glRotateZi](#) (int angle)  
Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle about the z axis.

void [glScalef](#) (float x, float y, float z)  
multiply the current matrix by a scale matrix  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

void [glScalef32](#) (int x, int y, int z)  
multiply the current matrix by a scale matrix  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

void [glScalev](#) (const [GLvector](#) \*v)

multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

void [glSetOutlineColor](#) (int id, [rgb](#) color)  
 Specifies an edge color for polygons.

void [glSetToonTable](#) (const [uint16](#) \*table)  
 Loads a toon table.

void [glSetToonTableRange](#) (int start, int end, [rgb](#) color)  
 Sets a range of colors on the toon table.

void [glStoreMatrix](#) (int index)  
 Place the current matrix into the stack at a location  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack)

void [glTexCoord2f](#) (float s, float t)  
 Sets texture coordinates for following vertices  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes)

void [glTexCoord2f32](#) (int u, int v)  
 Sets texture coordinates for following vertices  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes)

void [glTexCoord2t16](#) ([t16](#) u, [t16](#) v)  
 Sets texture coordinates for following vertices  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes)

int [glTexImage2D](#) (int target, int empty1, [GL\\_TEXTURE\\_TYPE\\_ENUM](#) type, int sizeX, int sizeY, int empty2, int param, const void \*texture)  
 Loads a 2D texture into texture memory and sets the currently bound texture ID to the attributes specified.

void [glTexParameter](#) (int target, int param)  
 Set parameters for the current texture. Although named the same as its gl counterpart, it is not compatible. Effort may be made in the future to make it so.

void [glTranslatef](#) (float x, float y, float z)  
 multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

void [glTranslatef32](#) (int x, int y, int z)  
 multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

void [glTranslatev](#) (const [GLvector](#) \*v)  
 multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

void [gluLookAt](#) (float eyex, float eyey, float eyez, float lookAtx, float lookAty, float lookAtz, float upx, float upy, float upz)  
 Places the camera at the specified location and orientation (floating point version)

void [gluLookAtf32](#) (int eyex, int eyey, int eyez, int lookAtx, int lookAty, int lookAtz, int upx, int upy, int upz)  
 Places the camera at the specified location and orientation (fixed point version)

void [gluPerspective](#) (float fovy, float aspect, float zNear, float zFar)

Utility function which sets up the projection matrix (floating point version)

void [gluPerspectivef32](#) (int fovy, int aspect, int zNear, int zFar)

Utility function which sets up the projection matrix (fixed point version)

void [gluPickMatrix](#) (int x, int y, int width, int height, const int viewport[4])

Utility function which generates a picking matrix for selection.

void [glVertex3f](#) (float x, float y, float z)

specifies a vertex location

void [glVertex3v16](#) ([v16](#) x, [v16](#) y, [v16](#) z)

specifies a vertex

void [glViewport](#) (uint8 x1, [uint8](#) y1, [uint8](#) x2, [uint8](#) y2)

specify the viewport for following drawing, can be set several times per frame.

[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

[u32](#) [POLY\\_ALPHA](#) (int n)

used in [glPolyFmt\(\)](#) to set the alpha level for the following polygons, set to 0 for wireframe mode

[u32](#) [POLY\\_ID](#) (int n)

used in [glPolyFmt\(\)](#) to set the Polygon ID for the following polygons

---

## Detailed Description

openGL (ish) interface to DS 3D hardware.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [DISP3DCNT\\_ENUM](#)

3D Display Control Register Enums

[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

related functions: [glEnable\(\)](#), [glDisable\(\)](#), [glInit\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

[GL\\_TEXTURE\\_2D](#) enable/disable textures on the geometry engine

[GL\\_TOON\\_HIGHLIGHT](#) enable = Highlight shading; disable = Toon shading

[GL\\_ALPHA\\_TEST](#) whether to use the alpha threshold set in [glAlphaFunc\(\)](#)

[GL\\_BLEND](#) enable/disable alpha blending

[GL\\_ANTIALIAS](#) enable/disable edge antialiasing; polygons must have different polygon IDs for the effect to work and the rear plane must be clear

[GL\\_OUTLINE](#) enable/disable edge coloring; the high 3bits of the polygon ID determine the color; [glSetOutlineColor\(\)](#) sets the available



colors

*GL\_FOG\_ONLY\_ALPHA* enable = fade into background?; disable = don't fade?

*PHA*

*GL\_FOG* enables/disables fog

*GL\_COLOR\_UNDERFLOW* enable = color buffer underflow, setting resets overflow flag;

*RFLOW* disable = no color buffer overflow

*GL\_POLYGON\_OVERFLOW* enable = polygon/vertex buffer overflow, setting resets overflow flag; disable = no polygon/vertex buffer overflow

*GL\_CLEAR\_BMP* rear/clear plane is in BMP mode; disable = rear/color plane is in clear mode

enum [GL\\_GET\\_ENUM](#)

Enums for reading stuff from the geometry engine

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3diomap>

related functions: [glGetInt\(\)](#), [glGetFixed\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

*GL\_GET\_VERTEX\_RAM\_COUNT* returns a count of vertexes currently stored in hardware vertex ram. Use [glGetInt\(\)](#) to retrieve

*GL\_GET\_POLYGON\_RAM\_COUNT* returns a count of polygons currently stored in hardware polygon ram. Use [glGetInt\(\)](#) to retrieve

*GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_VECTOR* returns the current 3x3 directional vector matrix. Use [glGetFixed\(\)](#) to retrieve

*GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_POSITION* returns the current 4x4 position matrix. Use [glGetFixed\(\)](#) to retrieve

*GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_PROJECTION* returns the current 4x4 projection matrix. Use [glGetFixed\(\)](#) to retrieve

*GL\_GET\_MATRIX\_CLIP* returns the current 4x4 clip matrix. Use [glGetFixed\(\)](#) to retrieve

*GL\_GET\_TEXTURE\_WIDTH* returns the width of the currently bound texture. Use [glGetInt\(\)](#) to retrieve

*GL\_GET\_TEXTURE\_HEIGHT* returns the height of the currently bound texture. Use [glGetInt\(\)](#) to retrieve

enum [GL\\_GLBEGIN\\_ENUM](#)

Enums selecting polygon draw mode

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygondefinitionsbyvertices)

related functions: [glBegin\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

*GL\_TRIANGLES* draw triangles with each 3 vertices defining a triangle



*GL\_QUADS* draw quads with each 4 vertices defining a quad

*GL\_TRIANGLE\_STRIP* draw triangles with the first triangle defined by 3 vertices, then each additional triangle being defined by one additional vertex

*GL\_QUAD\_STRIP* draw quads with the first quad being defined by 4 vertices, then each additional triangle being defined by 2 vertices.

*GL\_TRIANGLE* same as *GL\_TRIANGLES*, old non-OpenGL version

*GL\_QUAD* same as *GL\_QUADS*, old non-OpenGL version

enum [GL\\_MATERIALS\\_ENUM](#)

Enums for setting up materials

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters)

related functions: [glMaterialf\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

*GL\_AMBIENT* sets the ambient color for the material. The color when the normal is not facing light

*GL\_DIFFUSE* sets the diffuse color for the material. The color when the normal is facing light

*GL\_AMBIENT\_AND\_DIFFUSE* sets the set ambient and diffuse colors for the material; just a two-in-one of the above.

*GL\_SPECULAR* sets the specular color for the material. The glossy(highlight) color of the polygon

*GL\_SHININESS* sets the shininess color for the material. The color that shines back to the user. I have shiny pants!

*GL\_EMISSION* sets the emission color for the material. bright color that is independent of normals and lights

enum [GL\\_MATRIX\\_MODE\\_ENUM](#)

Enums selecting matrix mode

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

related functions: [glMatrixMode\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

*GL\_PROJECTION* used to set the Projection Matrix

*GL\_POSITION* used to set the Position Matrix

*GL\_MODELVIEW* used to set the Modelview Matrix

*GL\_TEXTURE* used to set the Texture Matrix

enum [GL\\_POLY\\_FORMAT\\_ENUM](#)

Enums for setting how polygons will be displayed

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes)

related functions: [glPolyFmt\(\)](#), [glInit\(\)](#), [POLY\\_ALPHA\(\)](#), [POLY\\_ID\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

<i>POLY_FORMAT_LIGHT0</i>	enable light number 0
<i>POLY_FORMAT_LIGHT1</i>	enable light number 1
<i>POLY_FORMAT_LIGHT2</i>	enable light number 2
<i>POLY_FORMAT_LIGHT3</i>	enable light number 3
<i>POLY_MODULATION</i>	enable modulation shading mode; this is the default
<i>POLY_DECAL</i>	enable decal shading
<i>POLY_TOON_HIGHLIGHT</i>	enable toon/highlight shading mode
<i>POLY_SHADOW</i>	enable shadow shading
<i>POLY_CULL_FRONT</i>	cull front polygons
<i>POLY_CULL_BACK</i>	cull rear polygons
<i>POLY_CULL_NONE</i>	don't cull any polygons
<i>POLY_FOG</i>	enable/disable fog for this polygon

enum [GL\\_TEXTURE\\_PARAM\\_ENUM](#)

Enums for texture parameters, such as texture wrapping and texture coord stuff

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes)

related functions: [glTexImage2d\(\)](#), [glTexParameter\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

<i>GL_TEXTURE_WRAP_S</i>	wrap(repeat) texture on S axis
<i>GL_TEXTURE_WRAP_T</i>	wrap(repeat) texture on T axis
<i>GL_TEXTURE_FLIP_S</i>	flip texture on S axis when wrapping
<i>GL_TEXTURE_FLIP_T</i>	flip texture on T axis when wrapping
<i>GL_TEXTURE_COLOR0_TRANSPARENT</i>	interpret color 0 as clear, same as old <i>GL_TEXTURE_ALPHA_MASK</i>
<i>TEXGEN_OFF</i>	use unmodified texcoord
<i>TEXGEN_TEXCOORD</i>	multiply texcoords by the texture-matrix
<i>TEXGEN_NORMAL</i>	set texcoords equal to normal * texture-matrix, used

for spherical reflection mapping

*TEXGEN\_POSITION* set texcoords equal to vertex \* texture-matrix

enum [GL\\_TEXTURE\\_SIZE\\_ENUM](#)

Enums for size of a texture, specify one for horizontal and one for vertical related functions: `glTexImage2d()`, [glTexParameter\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_8</i>	8 texels
<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_16</i>	16 texels
<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_32</i>	32 texels
<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_64</i>	64 texels
<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_128</i>	128 texels
<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_256</i>	256 texels
<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_512</i>	512 texels
<i>TEXTURE_SIZE_1024</i>	1024 texels

enum [GL\\_TEXTURE\\_TYPE\\_ENUM](#)

Enums for texture formats

[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureformats>

related functions: `glTexImage2d()`, [glTexParameter\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

<i>GL_RGB32_A3</i>	32 color palette, 3 bits of alpha
<i>GL_RGB4</i>	4 color palette
<i>GL_RGB16</i>	16 color palette
<i>GL_RGB256</i>	256 color palette
<i>GL_COMPRESSED</i>	compressed texture
<i>GL_RGB8_A5</i>	8 color palette, 5 bits of alpha
<i>GL_RGBA</i>	15 bit direct color, 1 bit of alpha
<i>GL_RGB</i>	15 bit direct color, manually sets alpha bit to 1

enum [GLFLUSH\\_ENUM](#)

Enums for [glFlush\(\)](#)

[GBATEK](#) <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

related functions: [glEnable\(\)](#), [glDisable\(\)](#), [glInit\(\)](#)

**Enumerator:**

<code>GL_TRANS_MANUALSO RT</code>	enable manual sorting of translucent polygons, otherwise uses Y-sorting
<code>GL_WBUFFERING</code>	enable W depth buffering of vertices, otherwise uses Z depth buffering

---

## Function Documentation

static void glAlphaFunc ( int *alphaThreshold* ) [*inline*]

set the minimum alpha value that will be used

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol)

**Parameters:**

*alphaThreshold* minimum alpha value that will be used (0-15)

void glAssignColorTable ( int *target*,  
int *name*  
)

nglAssignColorTable sets the active texture with a palette set with another texture

**Parameters:**

*target* ignored, only here for OpenGL compatability (not really, since this isn't in  
OpenGL)

*name* the name(int value) of the texture to load a palette from

static void glBegin ( [GL\\_BEGIN\\_ENUM](#) *mode* ) [*inline*]

Starts a polygon group.

**Parameters:**

*mode* the draw mode for the polygon

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
void glBindTexture ( int target,
                    int name
                    )
```

glBindTexure sets the current named texture to the active texture. Target is ignored as all DS textures are 2D

#### Parameters:

target ignored, only here for OpenGL compatability  
name the name(int value) to set to the current texture

#### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glClearColor ( uint8 red,
                          uint8 green,
                          uint8 blue,
                          uint8 alpha
                          ) [inline]
```

sets the color of the rear-plane(a.k.a Clear Color/Plane)

#### Parameters:

red component (0-31)  
green component (0-31)  
blue component (0-31)  
alpha from 0(clear) to 31(opaque)

#### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#), [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and [time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

static void glClearDepth ( [fixed12d3 depth](#) ) [inline]  
reset the depth buffer to this value; generally set this to GL\_MAX\_DEPTH.  
[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3drearplane](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3drearplane)

**Parameters:**

depth Something to do with the depth buffer, generally set to GL\_MAX\_DEPTH

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

static void glClearPolyID ( [uint8 ID](#) ) [inline]  
sets the polygon ID of the rear-plane(a.k.a. Clear/Color Plane), useful for antialiasing and edge coloring

**Parameters:**

ID the polygon ID to give the rear-plane

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glColor ( rgb color ) [inline]
```

Set the color for following vertices.

**Parameters:**

color the 15bit color value

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#).

```
static void glColor3b ( uint8 red,  
                       uint8 green,  
                       uint8 blue  
                       ) [inline]
```

Set the color for following vertices.

**Parameters:**

red the red component (0-255) Bottom 3 bits ignored

green the green component (0-255) Bottom 3 bits ignored

blue the blue component (0-255) Bottom 3 bits ignored

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glColor3f ( float r,  
                       float g,  
                       float b  
                       ) [inline]
```

specify a color for following vertices

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glColor3b\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**



r the red component of the color  
g the green component of the color  
b the blue component of the color

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
void glColorTableEXT ( int          target,  
                      int          empty1,  
                      uint16      width,  
                      int          empty2,  
                      int          empty3,  
                      const uint16 * table  
                      )
```

nglColorTableEXT loads a 15-bit color format palette into palette memory, and sets it to the currently bound texture (can be used to remove also)

**Parameters:**

*target* ignored, only here for OpenGL compatability  
*empty1* ignored, only here for OpenGL compatability  
*width* the length of the palette (if 0, then palette is removed from currently bound texture)  
*empty2* ignored, only here for OpenGL compatability  
*empty3* ignored, only here for OpenGL compatability  
*table* pointer to the palette data to load (if NULL, then palette is removed from currently bound texture)

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glCutoffDepth ( fixed12d3 wVal ) [inline]
```

Stop the drawing of polygons that are a certain distance from the camera.

GBATEK <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

**Parameters:**

wVal polygons that are beyond this W-value(distance from camera) will not be drawn; 15bit value.



```
int glDeleteTextures ( int    n,
                      int * names
                      )
```

Deletes the specified number of textures (and associated palettes)

**Parameters:**

*n*            the number of textures to delete  
*names* pointer to the names array to empty

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glDisable ( int bits ) [inline]
```

Disables various gl states (blend, alpha test, etc..)

**Parameters:**

*bits* bit mask of desired attributes, attributes are enumerated in DISP3DCNT\_ENUM

```
static void glEnable ( int bits ) [inline]
```

Enables various gl states (blend, alpha test, etc..)

**Parameters:**

*bits* bit mask of desired attributes, attributes are enumerated in DISP3DCNT\_ENUM

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glFlush ( u32 mode ) [inline]
```

Waits for a Vblank and swaps the buffers(like swiWaitForVBlank), but lets you specify some 3D options

GBATEK <http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol>

**Parameters:**

*mode* flags from GLFLUSH\_ENUM for enabling Y-sorting of translucent polygons

and W-Buffering of all vertices

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static void glFogColor ( uint8  red,  
                        uint8  green,  
                        uint8  blue,  
                        uint8  alpha  
                        )      [inline]
```

sets the fog color

**Parameters:**

red component (0-31)  
green component (0-31)  
blue component (0-31)  
alpha from 0(clear) to 31(opaque)

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#).

```
static void glFogDensity ( int  index,  
                           int  density  
                           )      [inline]
```

sets the fog density at a given index

**Parameters:**

index fog table index to operate on (0 to 31)  
density fog density from 0 (none) to 127 (opaque)

**Examples:**

<Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp>.

```
static void glFogOffset ( int shift ) [inline]
```

Sets the FOG\_OFFSET value.

**Parameters:**

shift FOG\_OFFSET value; fogging begins at this depth with a density of  
FOG\_TABLE[0]

**Examples:**

<Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp>.

```
static void glFogShift ( int shift ) [inline]
```

Sets the FOG\_SHIFT value.

**Parameters:**

shift FOG\_SHIFT value; each entry of the fog table covers 0x400 >> FOG\_SHIFT  
depth values

**Examples:**

<Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp>.

```
static void glFrustum ( float left,  
                        float right,  
                        float bottom,  
                        float top,  
                        float near,  
                        float far  
                        ) [inline]
```

Specifies the viewing frustum for the projection matrix (floating point version)

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glFrustumf32\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

left left right top and bottom describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane  
right left right top and bottom describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane  
top left right top and bottom describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane  
bottom left right top and bottom describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane  
near Location of a the near clipping plane (parallel to viewing window)  
far Location of a the far clipping plane (parallel to viewing window)

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

```
static void glFrustumf32 ( int  left,
                          int  right,
                          int  bottom,
                          int  top,
                          int  near,
                          int  far
                          )      [inline]
```

Specifies the viewing frustum for the projection matrix (fixed point version)

**Parameters:**

<i>left</i>	<i>left right top and bottom</i> describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane
<i>right</i>	<i>left right top and bottom</i> describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane
<i>top</i>	<i>left right top and bottom</i> describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane
<i>bottom</i>	<i>left right top and bottom</i> describe a rectangle located at the near clipping plane
<i>near</i>	Location of a the near clipping plane (parallel to viewing window)
<i>far</i>	Location of a the far clipping plane (parallel to viewing window)

<convert float to f32

```
int glGenTextures ( int   n,
                   int * names
                   )
```

Creates room for the specified number of textures.

**Parameters:**

<i>n</i>	the number of textures to generate
<i>names</i>	pointer to the names array to fill

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glGetFixed ( const GL\_GET\_ENUM param,
                        int * f
                        )      [inline]
```

Grabs fixed format of state variables

OpenGL's modelview matrix is handled on the DS with two matrices. The combination of

the DS's position matrix and directional vector matrix hold the data that is in OpenGL's one modelview matrix. (a.k.a. modelview = position and vector)

<http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3diomap>

**Parameters:**

param The state variable to retrieve

f pointer with room to hold the requested data

```
static void glGetInt ( GL\_GET\_ENUM param,  
                      int * i  
                      ) [inline]
```

Grabs integer state variables from OpenGL.

**Parameters:**

param The state variable to retrieve

i pointer with room to hold the requested data

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#).

```
void* glGetTexturePointer ( int name )
```

returns the address allocated to the texture named by name

**Parameters:**

name the name of the texture to get a pointer to

```
static void glLight ( int id,  
                     rgb color,  
                     v10 x,  
                     v10 y,  
                     v10 z  
                     ) [inline]
```

set a light up. Only parallel light sources are supported on the DS

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters)

**Parameters:**

id the number of the light to setup

color the color of the light

x the x component of the lights directional vector. Direction must be normalized

y the y component of the lights directional vector. Direction must be normalized

z the z component of the lights directional vector. Direction must be normalized

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

static void glLoadMatrix4x3 ( const [m4x3](#) \* *m* ) [inline]

Loads a 4x3 matrix into the current matrix.

**Parameters:**

*m* pointer to a 4x4 matrix

static void glLoadMatrix4x4 ( const [m4x4](#) \* *m* ) [inline]

Loads a 4x4 matrix into the current matrix.

**Parameters:**

*m* pointer to a 4x4 matrix

void glMaterialf ( [GL\\_MATERIALS\\_ENUM](#) *mode*,  
                  [rgb](#)                  *color*  
                  )

specify the material properties to be used in rendering lit polygons

**Parameters:**

*mode* which material property to change

*color* the color to set for that material property

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

static void glMatrixMode ( [GL\\_MATRIX\\_MODE\\_ENUM](#) *mode* ) [inline]

change the current matrix mode

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

**Parameters:**

*mode* the mode for the matrix

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

static void glmultMatrix3x3 ( const [m3x3](#) \* *m* ) [inline]  
multiplies the current matrix by m

**Parameters:**

m pointer to a 3x3 matrix

static void glmultMatrix4x3 ( const [m4x3](#) \* *m* ) [inline]  
multiplies the current matrix by

**Parameters:**

m pointer to a 4x3 matrix

static void glmultMatrix4x4 ( const [m4x4](#) \* *m* ) [inline]  
Multiplies the current matrix by m.

**Parameters:**

m pointer to a 4x4 matrix

static void glNormal ( [u32](#) *normal* ) [inline]  
the normal to use for following vertices

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters](#)

**Warning:**

The nature of the format means that you can't represent the following normals exactly  
(0,0,1), (0,1,0), or (1,0,0)

**Parameters:**

normal the packed normal(3 \* 10bit x, y, z)

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glNormal3f ( float x,  
                        float y,  
                        float z  
                        ) [inline]
```

the normal to use for following vertices

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonlightparameters](#)

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glNormal\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

x x component of the normal, vector must be normalized

y y component of the normal, vector must be normalized

z z component of the normal, vector must be normalized

<convert float to v10

<convert float to v10

<convert float to v10

<Pack 3 v10 normals into a 32bit value

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#).

```
static void glOrtho ( float  left,
                    float  right,
                    float  bottom,
                    float  top,
                    float  zNear,
                    float  zFar
                    )      [inline]
```

Multiplies the current matrix into ortho graphic mode.

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glOrthof32\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

left left vertical clipping plane

right right vertical clipping plane

bottom bottom vertical clipping plane

top top vertical clipping plane

zNear near clipping plane

zFar far clipping plane

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), and [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glOrthof32 ( int  left,
                       int  right,
                       int  bottom,
```



```

        int top,
        int zNear,
        int zFar
    ) [inline]

```

Multiplies the current matrix into ortho graphic mode.

#### Parameters:

left     left vertical clipping plane  
 right    right vertical clipping plane  
 bottom   bottom vertical clipping plane  
 top      top vertical clipping plane  
 zNear    near clipping plane  
 zFar     far clipping plane

<convert int to f32

<convert int to f32

<convert int to f32

<convert float to f32

```
static void glPolyFmt ( u32 params ) [inline]
```

Set the parameters for polygons rendered on the current frame

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dpolygonattributes)

#### Parameters:

the paramters to set for the polygons for the current frame. valid paramters  
 params are enumerated in GL\_POLY\_FORMAT\_ENUM and in the functions  
[POLY\\_ALPHA\(\)](#) and [POLY\\_ID\(\)](#)

#### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static void glPopMatrix ( int num ) [inline]
```

Pops num matrices off the stack

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack)

**Parameters:**

num the number to pop down the stack

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#), [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and [time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static void glRestoreMatrix ( int index ) [inline]
```

Restores the current matrix from a location in the stack

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack)

**Parameters:**

index the place in the stack to restore to

```
static void glRotatef ( float angle,  
                      float x,  
                      float y,  
                      float z  
                      ) [inline]
```

Rotate about an arbitrary axis.

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glRotatef32i\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

angle the angle to rotate by

x the x component of the axis to rotate on

y the y component of the axis to rotate on

z the z component of the axis to rotate on

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), and [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glRotatef32 ( float  angle,  
                        int    x,  
                        int    y,  
                        int    z  
                        )      [inline]
```

Rotate on an arbitrary axis.

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glRotatef32i\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

*angle* the angle to rotate by  
*x* the x component of the axis to rotate on  
*y* the y component of the axis to rotate on  
*z* the z component of the axis to rotate on

```
void glRotatef32i ( int  angle,  
                  int  x,  
                  int  y,  
                  int  z  
                  )
```

Rotates the model view matrix by angle about the specified unit vector.

**Parameters:**

*angle* The angle to rotate by  
*x* X component of the unit vector axis.  
*y* Y component of the unit vector axis.  
*z* Z component of the unit vector axis.

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#), and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glRotateX ( float  angle ) [inline]
```

Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle degrees about the x axis.

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glRotateXi\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

*angle* The angle to rotate by

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glRotateXi ( int angle ) [inline]
```

Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle about the x axis.

**Parameters:**

angle The angle to rotate by (angle is -32768 to 32767)

<convert int to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
and [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glRotateY ( float angle ) [inline]
```

Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle degrees about the y axis.

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glRotateYi\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

angle The angle to rotate by

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glRotateYi ( int angle ) [inline]
```

Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle about the y axis.

**Parameters:**

angle The angle to rotate by (angle is -32768 to 32767)

<convert int to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
and [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glRotateZ ( float angle ) [inline]
```

Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle degrees about the z axis.

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glRotateZi\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

angle The angle to rotate by

**Examples:**

[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c.](#)

```
static void glRotateZi ( int angle ) [inline]
```

Rotates the current modelview matrix by angle about the z axis.

**Parameters:**

angle The angle to rotate by (angle is -32768 to 32767)

<convert int to f32

```
static void glScalef ( float x,  
                      float y,  
                      float z  
                      ) [inline]
```

multiply the current matrix by a scale matrix

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](#)

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glScalev\(\)](#) or [glScalef32\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

x scaling on the x axis

y scaling on the y axis

z scaling on the z axis

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp.](#)

```
static void glScalef32 ( int x,  
                        int y,  
                        int z  
                        ) [inline]
```

multiply the current matrix by a scale matrix

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](#)

**Parameters:**

x scaling on the x axis

y scaling on the y axis

z scaling on the z axis

```
static void glScalev ( const GLvector * v ) [inline]
```

multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](#)

**Parameters:**

v the vector to translate by

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp.](#)

```
static void glSetOutlineColor ( int id,
                               rgb color
                               ) \[inline\]
```

Specifies an edge color for polygons.

**Parameters:**

*id* which outline color to set (0-7)

*color* the 15bit color to set

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glSetToonTable ( const uint16 * table ) \[inline\]
```

Loads a toon table.

**Parameters:**

*table* pointer to the 32 color palette to load into the toon table

```
static void glSetToonTableRange ( int start,
                                   int end,
                                   rgb color
                                   ) \[inline\]
```

Sets a range of colors on the toon table.

**Parameters:**

*start* the start of the range

*end* the end of the range

*color* the color to set for that range

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glStoreMatrix ( int index ) \[inline\]
```

Place the current matrix into the stack at a location

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixstack](#)

**Parameters:**

*index* the place in the stack to put the current matrix

```
static void glTexCoord2f ( float s,
                           float t
                           ) \[inline\]
```

Sets texture coordinates for following vertices

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](#)

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glTexCoord2t16\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

*s* S(a.k.a. U) texture coordinate (0.0 - 1.0)

*t* T(a.k.a. V) texture coordinate (0.0 - 1.0)

<convert float to t16

<convert float to t16

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#).

```
void glTexCoord2f32 ( int u,
                    int v
                    )
```

Sets texture coordinates for following vertices

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](#)

**Parameters:**

u U(a.k.a. S) texture coordinate (0.0 - 1.0)

v V(a.k.a. T) texture coordinate (0.0 - 1.0)

```
static void glTexCoord2t16 ( t16 u,
                          t16 v
                          ) [inline]
```

Sets texture coordinates for following vertices

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dtextureattributes](#)

**Parameters:**

u U(a.k.a. S) texture coordinate in texels

v V(a.k.a. T) texture coordinate in texels

<Pack 2 t16 texture coordinate values into a 32bit value

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
int glTexImage2D ( int target,
                  int empty1,
                  GL_TEXTURE_TYPE_ENUM type,
                  int sizeX,
                  int sizeY,
                  int empty2,
                  int param,
                  const void * texture
                  )
```

Loads a 2D texture into texture memory and sets the currently bound texture ID to the attributes specified.

**Parameters:**

target not used, just here for OpenGL compatibility

empty1 not used, just here for OpenGL compatibility

type The format of the texture

sizeX the horizontal size of the texture; valid sizes are enumerated in  
GL\_TEXTURE\_TYPE\_ENUM

sizeY the vertical size of the texture; valid sizes are enumerated in  
GL\_TEXTURE\_TYPE\_ENUM

empty2 not used, just here for OpenGL compatibility

param parameters for the texture

texture pointer to the texture data to load

#### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
void glTexParameter ( int  target,
                     int  param
                     )
```

Set parameters for the current texture. Although named the same as its gl counterpart, it is not compatible. Effort may be made in the future to make it so.

#### Parameters:

target not used, just here for OpenGL compatibility

param paramaters for the texture

```
static void glTranslatef ( float  x,
                          float  y,
                          float  z
                          )      [inline]
```

multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

#### Warning:

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glTranslatef32\(\)](#)

#### Parameters:

x translation on the x axis

y translation on the y axis

z translation on the z axis

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

#### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),



[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static void glTranslatef32 ( int x,  
                           int y,  
                           int z  
                           )      [inline]
```

multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

**Parameters:**

x translation on the x axis

y translation on the y axis

z translation on the z axis

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glTranslatev ( const GLvector * v ) [inline]
```

multiply the current matrix by a translation matrix

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3dmatrixloadmultiply)

**Parameters:**

v the vector to translate by

```
static void gluLookAt ( float eyex,  
                       float eyey,  
                       float eyez,  
                       float lookAtx,  
                       float lookAty,  
                       float lookAtz,  
                       float upx,  
                       float upy,  
                       float upz  
                       )      [inline]
```

Places the camera at the specified location and orientation (floating point version)

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [gluLookAtf32\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

eyex (eyex, eyey, eyez) Location of the camera.  
eyey (eyex, eyey, eyez) Location of the camera.  
eyez (eyex, eyey, eyez) Location of the camera.  
lookAtx (lookAtx, lookAty, lookAtz) Where the camera is looking.  
lookAty (lookAtx, lookAty, lookAtz) Where the camera is looking.  
lookAtz (lookAtx, lookAty, lookAtz) Where the camera is looking.  
upx <upx, upy, upz> Unit vector describing which direction is up for the camera.  
upy <upx, upy, upz> Unit vector describing which direction is up for the camera.  
upz <upx, upy, upz> Unit vector describing which direction is up for the camera.

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static void gluLookAtf32 ( int eyex,  
                           int eyey,  
                           int eyez,  
                           int lookAtx,  
                           int lookAty,  
                           int lookAtz,  
                           int upx,  
                           int upy,  
                           int upz  
                           ) [inline]
```

Places the camera at the specified location and orientation (fixed point version)

**Parameters:**

eyex (eyex, eyey, eyez) Location of the camera.  
eyey (eyex, eyey, eyez) Location of the camera.  
eyez (eyex, eyey, eyez) Location of the camera.  
lookAtx (lookAtx, lookAty, lookAtz) Where the camera is looking.  
lookAty (lookAtx, lookAty, lookAtz) Where the camera is looking.  
lookAtz (lookAtx, lookAty, lookAtz) Where the camera is looking.  
upx <upx, upy, upz> Unit vector describing which direction is up for the camera.  
upy <upx, upy, upz> Unit vector describing which direction is up for the camera.  
upz <upx, upy, upz> Unit vector describing which direction is up for the camera.

```
static void gluPerspective ( float fovy,  
                           float aspect,  
                           float zNear,  
                           float zFar  
                           ) [inline]
```

Utility function which sets up the projection matrix (floating point version)

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [gluPerspectivef32\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

fovy Specifies the field of view in degrees  
aspect Specifies the aspect ratio of the screen (normally screen width/screen height)  
zNear Specifies the near clipping plane  
zFar Specifies the far clipping plane

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

<convert float to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static void gluPerspectivef32 ( int  fovy,  
                               int  aspect,  
                               int  zNear,  
                               int  zFar  
                               )      [inline]
```

Utility function which sets up the projection matrix (fixed point version)

**Parameters:**

fovy     Specifies the field of view in degrees (-32768 to 32767)  
aspect   Specifies the aspect ratio of the screen (normally screen width/screen height)  
zNear    Specifies the near clipping plane  
zFar     Specifies the far clipping plane

```
static void gluPickMatrix ( int      x,  
                           int      y,  
                           int      width,  
                           int      height,  
                           const int viewport[4]  
                           )          [inline]
```

Utility function which generates a picking matrix for selection.

**Parameters:**

x            2D x of center (touch x normally)  
y            2D y of center (touch y normally)  
width        width in pixels of the window (3 or 4 is a good number)  
height       height in pixels of the window (3 or 4 is a good number)  
viewport     the current viewport (normally {0, 0, 255, 191})

<convert int to f32

<convert int to f32

<convert int to f32

<convert int to f32

<convert int to f32

<convert int to f32

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glVertex3f ( float  x,  
                        float  y,  
                        float  z
```

```
) [inline]
```

specifies a vertex location

**Warning:**

FLOAT VERSION!!!! please use [glVertex3v16\(\)](#)

**Parameters:**

x the x component of the vertex

y the y component of the vertex

z the z component of the vertex

<convert float to v16

<convert float to v16

<convert float to v16

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#), and [time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static void glVertex3v16 ( v16 x,  
                           v16 y,  
                           v16 z  
                           ) [inline]
```

specifies a vertex

**Parameters:**

x the x component for the vertex

y the y component for the vertex

z the z component for the vertex

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Paletted\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void glViewport ( uint8 x1,  
                        uint8 y1,  
                        uint8 x2,  
                        uint8 y2
```

) [inline]

specify the viewport for following drawing, can be set several times per frame.

[GBATEK http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol](http://nocash.emubase.de/gbatek.htm#ds3ddisplaycontrol)

**Parameters:**

- x1 the left of the viewport
- y1 the bottom of the viewport
- x2 the right of the viewport
- y2 the top of the viewport

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettet\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

static [u32](#) POLY\_ALPHA ( int *n* ) [inline]

used in [glPolyFmt\(\)](#) to set the alpha level for the following polygons, set to 0 for wireframe mode

**Parameters:**

- n the level of alpha (0-31)

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Display\\_List/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Display\\_List\\_2/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#).

```
static int POLY_ID ( int n ) [inline]
```

used in [glPolyFmt\(\)](#) to set the Polygon ID for the following polygons

**Parameters:**

*n* the ID to set for following polygons (0-63)

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), and [Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#).

---

# boxtest.h File Reference

Box Test Functions. [More...](#)

```
#include "nds/arm9/video.h"  
#include "nds/arm9/videoGL.h"
```

## Functions

int [BoxTest](#) ([v16](#) x, [v16](#) y, [v16](#) z, [v16](#) width, [v16](#) height, [v16](#) depth)

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum.

void [BoxTest\\_Asynch](#) ([v16](#) x, [v16](#) y, [v16](#) z, [v16](#) height, [v16](#) width, [v16](#) depth)

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. BoxTestResult must be called to get the result of this operation.

int [BoxTestf](#) (float x, float y, float z, float width, float height, float depth)

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum.

void [BoxTestf\\_Asynch](#) (float x, float y, float z, float width, float height, float depth)

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. BoxTestResult must be called to get the result of this operation.

int [BoxTestResult](#) (void)

Gets the result of the last box test. Needed for asynch box test calls.

---

## Detailed Description

Box Test Functions.

---

## Function Documentation

```
int BoxTest ( v16 x,  
              v16 y,  
              v16 z,  
              v16 width,  
              v16 height,  
              v16 depth  
            )
```

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum.

### Parameters:

x (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box

y (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box

z (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box

height (height, width, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y,



z)  
 width (height, width, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)  
 depth (height, width, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

**Returns:**

non zero if any or all of the box is in the view frustum.

**Examples:**

<Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp>.

```
void BoxTest_Asynch ( v16 x,
                     v16 y,
                     v16 z,
                     v16 height,
                     v16 width,
                     v16 depth
                     )
```

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. BoxTestResult must be called to get the result of this operation.

**Parameters:**

x (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box  
 y (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box  
 z (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box  
 width (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)  
 height (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)  
 depth (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

```
int BoxTestf ( float x,
              float y,
              float z,
              float width,
              float height,
              float depth
              )
```

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum.

**Parameters:**

x (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box  
 y (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box  
 z (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box  
 width (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

height (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

depth (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

**Returns:**

non zero if any or all of the box is in the view frustum.

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#).

```
void BoxTestf_Asynch ( float x,  
                      float y,  
                      float z,  
                      float width,  
                      float height,  
                      float depth  
                      )
```

Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. Performs a test to determine if the provided box is in the view frustum. BoxTestResult must be called to get the result of this operation.

**Parameters:**

x (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box

y (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box

z (x, y, z) point of a vertex on the box

width (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

height (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

depth (width, height, depth) describe the size of the box referenced from (x, y, z)

```
int BoxTestResult ( void )
```

Gets the result of the last box test. Needed for asynch box test calls.

**Returns:**

non zero if any or all of the box is in the view frustum.

---

# postest.h File Reference

Position Test Functions.

[More...](#)

```
#include <nds/arm9/video.h>
#include <nds/arm9/videoGL.h>
```

## Functions

- GL\_STATIC\_INL  
void [PosTest](#) ([v16](#) x, [v16](#) y, [v16](#) z)  
Performs a position test.
- GL\_STATIC\_INL  
void [PosTest\\_Asynch](#) ([v16](#) x, [v16](#) y, [v16](#) z)  
Starts a position test asynchronously.
- GL\_STATIC\_INL  
[bool](#) [PosTestBusy](#) ()  
true if the hardware is currently performing a position/vertex/box test.
- GL\_STATIC\_INL  
[int32](#) [PosTestWresult](#) ()  
Returns the distance from the camera of the last position test, pretty darn useful.
- GL\_STATIC\_INL  
[int32](#) [PosTestXresult](#) ()  
Returns absolute X position of the last position test (location if the modelview matrix was identity)
- GL\_STATIC\_INL  
[int32](#) [PosTestYresult](#) ()  
Returns absolute Y position of the last position test (location if the modelview matrix was identity)
- GL\_STATIC\_INL  
[int32](#) [PosTestZresult](#) ()  
Returns absolute Z position of the last position test (location if the modelview matrix was identity)
- 

## Detailed Description

Position Test Functions.

The position test multiplies a given vector by the position matrix and returns the coords(x,y,z,w). The position test is really quick, about 10x faster than a box test.

---

## Function Documentation

GL\_STATIC\_INL void [PosTest](#) ( [v16](#) x,

```
        v16 y,  
        v16 z  
    )
```

Performs a position test.

**Parameters:**

x specifies x offset from the current modelview matrix  
y specifies y offset from the current modelview matrix  
z specifies z offset from the current modelview matrix

```
GL_STATIC_INL void PosTest_Asynch ( v16 x,  
                                   v16 y,  
                                   v16 z  
                                   )
```

Starts a position test asynchronously.

**Parameters:**

x specifies x offset from the current modelview matrix  
y specifies y offset from the current modelview matrix  
z specifies z offset from the current modelview matrix

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#).

```
GL_STATIC_INL bool PosTestBusy ( )
```

true if the hardware is currently performing a position/vertex/box test.

**Returns:**

whether a test is being performed

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#).

```
GL_STATIC_INL int32 PosTestWresult ( )
```

Returns the distance from the camera of the last position test, pretty darn useful.

**Returns:**

W magnitude

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#).

```
GL_STATIC_INL int32 PosTestXresult ( )
```

Returns absolute X position of the last position test (location if the modelview matrix was identity)

**Returns:**

Absolute X position

```
GL_STATIC_INL int32 PosTestYresult ( )
```

Returns absolute Y position of the last position test (location if the modelview matrix was identity)

**Returns:**

Absolute Y position

GL\_STATIC\_INL [int32](#) PosTestZresult ( )

Returns absolute Z position of the last position test (location if the modelview matrix was identity)

**Returns:**

Absolute Z position

---

## Audio API

# sound.h File Reference

A simple sound playback library for the DS. Provides functionality for starting and stopping sound effects from the ARM9 side as well as access to PSG and noise hardware. Maxmod should be used in most music and sound effect situations. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
```

## Enumerations

```
enum DutyCycle {  
    DutyCycle\_0 = 7,  
    DutyCycle\_12 = 0,  
    DutyCycle\_25 = 1,  
    DutyCycle\_37 = 2,  
    DutyCycle\_50 = 3,  
    DutyCycle\_62 = 4,  
    DutyCycle\_75 = 5,  
    DutyCycle\_87 = 6  
}
```

PSG Duty cycles used by the PSG hardware.

[More...](#)

```
enum MicFormat {  
    MicFormat\_8Bit = 1,  
    MicFormat\_12Bit = 0  
}
```

Microphone recording formats DS.

[More...](#)

```
enum SoundFormat {  
    SoundFormat\_16Bit = 1,  
    SoundFormat\_8Bit = 0,  
    SoundFormat\_PSG = 3,  
    SoundFormat\_ADPCM = 2  
}
```

Sound formats used by the DS.

[More...](#)

## Functions

void [soundDisable](#) (void)

Disables Sound on the DS.

void [soundEnable](#) (void)

Enables Sound on the DS. Should be called prior to attempting sound playback.

void [soundKill](#) (int soundId)  
Stops the sound specified by soundId and frees any resources allocated.

void [soundMicOff](#) (void)  
Stops the microphone from recording.

int [soundMicRecord](#) (void \*buffer, [u32](#) bufferLength, [MicFormat](#) format, int freq, MicCallback callback)  
Starts a microphone recording to a double buffer specified by buffer.

void [soundPause](#) (int soundId)  
Pause the sound specified by soundId.

int [soundPlayNoise](#) ([u16](#) freq, [u8](#) volume, [u8](#) pan)  
Plays white noise with the specified parameters.

int [soundPlayPSG](#) ([DutyCycle](#) cycle, [u16](#) freq, [u8](#) volume, [u8](#) pan)  
Pause a tone with the specified properties.

int [soundPlaySample](#) (const void \*data, [SoundFormat](#) format, [u32](#) dataSize, [u16](#) freq, [u8](#) volume, [u8](#) pan, [bool](#) loop, [u16](#) loopPoint)  
Plays a sound in the specified format at the specified frequency.

void [soundResume](#) (int soundId)  
Resumes a paused sound.

void [soundSetFreq](#) (int soundId, [u16](#) freq)  
Sets the sound frequency.

void [soundSetPan](#) (int soundId, [u8](#) pan)  
Sets the sound pan.

void [soundSetVolume](#) (int soundId, [u8](#) volume)  
Sets the sound volume.

void [soundSetWaveDuty](#) (int soundId, [DutyCycle](#) cycle)  
Sets the Wave Duty of a PSG sound.

---

## Detailed Description

A simple sound playback library for the DS. Provides functionality for starting and stopping sound effects from the ARM9 side as well as access to PSG and noise hardware. Maxmod should be used in most music and sound effect situations.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [DutyCycle](#)

PSG Duty cycles used by the PSG hardware.

### Enumerator:

*DutyCycle\_0* 0.0% duty cycle

*DutyCycle\_12* 12.5% duty cycle

*DutyCycle\_25* 25.0% duty cycle

*DutyCycle\_37* 37.5% duty cycle

*DutyCycle\_50* 50.0% duty cycle

*DutyCycle\_62* 62.5% duty cycle

*DutyCycle\_75* 75.0% duty cycle

*DutyCycle\_87* 87.5% duty cycle

enum [MicFormat](#)

Microphone recording formats DS.

**Enumerator:**

*MicFormat\_8Bit* 8-bit PCM

*MicFormat\_12Bit* 12-bit PCM

enum [SoundFormat](#)

Sound formats used by the DS.

**Enumerator:**

*SoundFormat\_16Bit* 16-bit PCM

*SoundFormat\_8Bit* 8-bit PCM

*SoundFormat\_PSG* PSG (programmable sound generator?)

*SoundFormat\_ADPCM* IMA ADPCM compressed audio

---

## Function Documentation

void soundKill ( int *soundId* )

Stops the sound specified by soundId and frees any resources allocated.

**Parameters:**

soundId The sound ID returned by play sound

```
int soundMicRecord ( void *      buffer,
                    u32      bufferLength,
                    MicFormat format,
                    int         freq,
                    MicCallback callback
                    )
```

Starts a microphone recording to a double buffer specified by buffer.

**Parameters:**

buffer A pointer to the start of the double buffer



bufferLength The length of the buffer in bytes (both halves of the double buffer)  
 format Microphone can record in 8 or 12 bit format. 12 bit is shifted up to 16 bit pcm  
 freq The sample frequency  
 callback This will be called every time the buffer is full or half full

**Returns:**

Returns non zero for success.

**Examples:**

[audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c](http://audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c).

void soundPause ( int *soundId* )  
 Pause the sound specified by soundId.

**Parameters:**

soundId The sound ID returned by play sound

**Examples:**

[time/timercallback/source/main.c](http://time/timercallback/source/main.c).

```
int soundPlayNoise ( u16 freq,
                    u8  volume,
                    u8  pan
                    )
```

Plays white noise with the specified parameters.

**Parameters:**

freq The frequency in Hz of the sample  
 volume The channel volume. 0 to 127 (min to max)  
 pan The channel pan 0 to 127 (left to right with 64 being centered)

**Returns:**

An integer id corresponding to the channel of playback. This value can be used to pause, resume, or kill the sound as well as adjust volume, pan, and frequency

```
int soundPlayPSG ( DutyCycle cycle,
                  u16      freq,
                  u8       volume,
                  u8       pan
                  )
```

Pause a tone with the specified properties.

**Parameters:**

cycle The DutyCycle of the sound wave  
 freq The frequency in Hz of the sample  
 volume The channel volume. 0 to 127 (min to max)  
 pan The channel pan 0 to 127 (left to right with 64 being centered)

**Returns:**

An integer id corresponding to the channel of playback. This value can be used to pause, resume, or kill the sound as well as adjust volume, pan, and frequency

**Examples:**

<time/timercallback/source/main.c>.

```
int soundPlaySample ( const void *   data,
                     SoundFormat format,
                     u32           dataSize,
                     u16           freq,
                     u8            volume,
                     u8            pan,
                     bool          loop,
                     u16          loopPoint
                     )
```

Plays a sound in the specified format at the specified frequency.

**Parameters:**

data	A pointer to the sound data
format	The format of the data (only 16-bit and 8-bit pcm and ADPCM formats are supported by this function)
dataSize	The size in bytes of the sound data
freq	The frequency in Hz of the sample
volume	The channel volume. 0 to 127 (min to max)
pan	The channel pan 0 to 127 (left to right with 64 being centered)
loop	If true, the sample will loop playing once then repeating starting at the offset stored in loopPoint
loopPoint	The offset for the sample loop to restart when repeating

**Returns:**

An integer id corresponding to the channel of playback. This value can be used to pause, resume, or kill the sound as well as adjust volume, pan, and frequency

**Examples:**

<audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c>.

```
void soundResume ( int soundId )
```

Resumes a paused sound.

**Parameters:**

soundId	The sound ID returned by play sound
---------	-------------------------------------

**Examples:**

<time/timercallback/source/main.c>.

```
void soundSetFreq ( int soundId,
                   u16 freq
                   )
```

Sets the sound frequency.

**Parameters:**

soundId	The sound ID returned by play sound
freq	The frequency in Hz

```
void soundSetPan ( int soundId,  
                  u8 pan  
                  )
```

Sets the sound pan.

**Parameters:**

*soundId* The sound ID returned by play sound

*pan* The new pan value (0 to 127 left to right (64 = center))

```
void soundSetVolume ( int soundId,  
                     u8 volume  
                     )
```

Sets the sound volume.

**Parameters:**

*soundId* The sound ID returned by play sound

*volume* The new volume (0 to 127 min to max)

```
void soundSetWaveDuty ( int soundId,  
                       DutyCycle cycle  
                       )
```

Sets the Wave Duty of a PSG sound.

**Parameters:**

*soundId* The sound ID returned by play sound

*cycle* The DutyCycle of the sound wave

---

## Math

# math.h File Reference

hardware coprocessor math instructions. [More...](#)

```
#include "nds/ndstypes.h"
```

## Functions

static void [crossf32](#) ([int32](#) \*a, [int32](#) \*b, [int32](#) \*result)  
1.19.12 fixed point cross product function result = AxB

static [int32](#) [div32](#) ([int32](#) num, [int32](#) den)  
integer divide

static [int32](#) [div64](#) ([int64](#) num, [int32](#) den)  
integer 64 bit divide

static [int32](#) [divf32](#) ([int32](#) num, [int32](#) den)  
Fixed point divide.

static [int32](#) [dotf32](#) ([int32](#) \*a, [int32](#) \*b)  
1.19.12 fixed point dot product function result = A dot B

static [int32](#) [mod32](#) ([int32](#) num, [int32](#) den)  
integer modulus

static [int32](#) [mod64](#) ([int64](#) num, [int32](#) den)  
integer 64 bit modulus

static [int32](#) [mulf32](#) ([int32](#) a, [int32](#) b)  
Fixed point multiply.

static void [normalizef32](#) ([int32](#) \*a)  
1.19.12 fixed point normalize function  $A = A / |A|$

static [u32](#) [sqrt32](#) (int a)  
integer sqrt

static [u32](#) [sqrt64](#) (long long a)  
integer sqrt

static [int32](#) [sqrtf32](#) ([int32](#) a)  
Fixed point sqrt.

---

## Detailed Description

hardware coprocessor math instructions.

---

## Function Documentation

static void crossf32 ( [int32](#) \* a,

```

        int32 * b,
        int32 * result
    ) [inline, static]

```

1.19.12 fixed point cross product function result = AxB

**Parameters:**

a pointer to fixed 3x3 matrix

b pointer to fixed 3x3 matrix

result pointer to fixed 3x3 matrix Cross product  $x = A_y * B_z - B_y * A_z$   $y = A_z * B_x - B_z * A_x$   $z = A_x * B_y - B_x * A_y$

```

static int32 div32 ( int32 num,
                    int32 den
                    ) [inline, static]

```

integer divide

**Parameters:**

num numerator

den denominator

**Returns:**

returns 32 bit integer result

```

static int32 div64 ( int64 num,
                    int32 den
                    ) [inline, static]

```

integer 64 bit divide

**Parameters:**

num 64 bit numerator

den 32 bit denominator

**Returns:**

returns 32 bit integer result

```

static int32 divf32 ( int32 num,
                     int32 den
                     ) [inline, static]

```

Fixed point divide.

**Parameters:**

num Takes 20.12 numerator.

den Takes 20.12 denominator.

**Returns:**

returns 20.12 result.

```

static int32 dotf32 ( int32 * a,
                     int32 * b
                     ) [inline, static]

```

1.19.12 fixed point dot product function result = A dot B

**Parameters:**

a pointer to fixed 3x3 matrix

b pointer to fixed 3x3 matrix

**Returns:**

32 bit integer result Dot Product result =  $A_x * B_x + A_y * B_y + A_z * B_z$

```
static int32 mod32 ( int32 num,
                  int32 den
                  )      [inline, static]
```

integer modulus

**Parameters:**

num numerator

den denominator

**Returns:**

returns 32 bit integer remainder

```
static int32 mod64 ( int64 num,
                  int32 den
                  )      [inline, static]
```

integer 64 bit modulus

**Parameters:**

num 64 bit numerator

den 32 bit denominator

**Returns:**

returns 32 bit integer remainder

```
static int32 mulf32 ( int32 a,
                   int32 b
                   )      [inline, static]
```

Fixed point multiply.

**Parameters:**

a Takes 20.12

b Takes 20.12

**Returns:**

returns 20.12 result

```
static void normalizef32 ( int32 * a ) [inline, static]
```

1.19.12 fixed point normalize function  $A = A / |A|$

**Parameters:**

a pointer to fixed 3x3 matrix Normalize  $A_x = A_x / \text{mag}$   $A_y = A_y / \text{mag}$   $A_z = A_z / \text{mag}$

```
static u32 sqrt32 ( int a ) [inline, static]
```

integer sqrt

**Parameters:**

a 32 bit integer argument

**Returns:**

returns 32 bit integer result

static [u32](#) sqrt64 ( long long *a* ) [inline, static]  
integer sqrt

**Parameters:**

*a* 64 bit integer argument

**Returns:**

returns 32 bit integer result

static [int32](#) sqrtf32 ( [int32](#) *a* ) [inline, static]  
Fixed point sqrt.

**Parameters:**

*a* Takes 20.12

**Returns:**

returns 20.12 result

---

# trig\_lut.h File Reference

fixed point trig functions. Angle can be in the range of -32768 to 32767. There are 32768 degrees in the unit circle used by nds. To convert between standard degrees (360 per circle): [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
```

## Defines

```
#define angleToDegrees(angle) ((angle) * 360 / DEGREES_IN_CIRCLE)  
    converts an angle in the format used by libnds in the 360 degree format.  
#define DEGREES\_IN\_CIRCLE (1 << 15)  
    number of degrees in a circle.  
#define degreesToAngle(degrees) ((degrees) * DEGREES_IN_CIRCLE / 360)  
    convert an angle in 360 degree format to the format used by libnds.  
#define fixedToFloat(n, bits) (((float)(n)) / (float)(1<<(bits)))  
    converts a fixed point number to a floating point number.  
#define fixedToInt(n, bits) ((int)((n)>>(bits)))  
    convert a fixed point number to an integer.  
#define floatToFixed(n, bits) ((int)((n) * (float)(1<<(bits))))  
    converts a floating point number to a fixed point number.  
#define floorFixed(n, bits) ((int)((n) & ~(((1 << (bits)) - 1))))  
    removes the decimal part of a fixed point number.  
#define intToFixed(n, bits) ((int)((n)<<(bits)))  
    converts an integer to a fixed point number.
```

## Functions

```
s16 acosLerp (s16 par)  
    fixed point arccos  
s16 asinLerp (s16 par)  
    fixed point arcsin  
s16 cosLerp (s16 angle)  
    fixed point cosine  
s16 sinLerp (s16 angle)  
    fixed point sine  
s32 tanLerp (s16 angle)  
    fixed point tangent
```

---

## Detailed Description

fixed point trig functions. Angle can be in the range of -32768 to 32767. There are 32768 degrees in the unit circle used by nds. To convert between standard degrees (360 per circle):



angle = [degreesToAngle\(angleInDegrees\)](#);

or

angle = angleInDegrees \* 32768 / 360;

This unit of measure is sometimes referred to as a binary radian (brad) or binary degree. It allows for more precise representation of angle and faster calculation as the DS has no floating point processor.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define fixedToFloat ( n,  
                      bits  
                      )    (((float)(n)) / (float)(1<<(bits)))
```

converts a fixed point number to a floating point number.

### Parameters:

n the fixed point number to convert.

bits the number of bits used for the decimal part.

### Returns:

the floating point number.

```
#define fixedToInt ( n,  
                    bits  
                    )    ((int)((n)>>(bits)))
```

convert a fixed point number to an integer.

### Parameters:

n the number the number to convert.

bits the number of bits used for the decimal part.

### Returns:

the integer part.

```
#define floatToFixed ( n,  
                      bits  
                      )    ((int)((n) * (float)(1<<(bits))))
```

converts a floating point number to a fixed point number.

### Parameters:

n the floating point number to convert.

bits the number of bits used for the decimal part.

### Returns:

the fixed point number.

```
#define floorFixed ( n,  
                    bits  
                    )    ((int)((n) & ~(((1 << (bits)) - 1))))
```

removes the decimal part of a fixed point number.

**Parameters:**

n the fixed point number.  
bits the number of bits used for the decimal part.

**Returns:**

a fixed point number with 0 as a decimal part.

```
#define intToFixed ( n,  
                    bits  
                    ) ((int)((n)<<(bits)))
```

converts an integer to a fixed point number.

**Parameters:**

n the integer to convert.  
bits the number of bits used for the decimal part.

**Returns:**

the fixed point number.

**Examples:**

[Graphics/Printing/rotscale\\_text/source/main.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#).

---

## Function Documentation

[s16](#) acosLerp ( [s16](#) *par* )

fixed point arccos

**Parameters:**

par 4.12 fixed point number with the range [-1, 1]

**Returns:**

s16 angle (-32768 to 32767)

[s16](#) asinLerp ( [s16](#) *par* )

fixed point arcsin

**Parameters:**

par 4.12 fixed point number with the range [-1, 1]

**Returns:**

s16 angle (-32768 to 32767)

[s16](#) cosLerp ( [s16](#) *angle* )

fixed point cosine

**Parameters:**

angle (-32768 to 32767)

**Returns:**

4.12 fixed point number with the range [-1, 1]

**Examples:**

[capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp](#),

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

[s16](#) sinLerp ( [s16](#) *angle* )

fixed point sine

**Parameters:**

angle (-32768 to 32767)

**Returns:**

4.12 fixed point number with the range [-1, 1]

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/streaming/source/main.c](#), [capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

[s32](#) tanLerp ( [s16](#) *angle* )

fixed point tangent

**Parameters:**

angle (-32768 to 32767)

**Returns:**

20.12 fixed point number with the range [-81.483, 524287.999]

---

## Memory

# memory.h File Reference

Defines for many of the regions of memory on the DS as well as a few control functions for memory bus access. [More...](#)

```
#include "<ndstypes.h>"
```

## Data Structures

- struct [sGBAHeader](#)  
the GBA file header format. See gbatek for more info. [More...](#)
- struct [sNDSBanner](#)  
the NDS banner format. See gbatek for more information. [More...](#)
- struct [sNDSHeader](#)  
the NDS file header format See gbatek for more info. [More...](#)

## Defines

- #define [ALLRAM](#) ((u8\*)0x00000000)  
8 bit pointer to the start of all the ram.
- #define [GBA\\_BUS](#) ((vu16\*)(0x08000000))  
16 bit volatile pointer to the GBA slot bus.
- #define [GBAROM](#) ((u16\*)0x08000000)  
16 bit pointer to the GBA slot ROM.
- #define [MAINRAM16](#) ((u16\*)0x02000000)  
16 bit pointer to main ram.
- #define [MAINRAM32](#) ((u32\*)0x02000000)  
32 bit pointer to main ram.
- #define [MAINRAM8](#) ((u8\*)0x02000000)  
8 bit pointer to main ram.
- #define [SRAM](#) ((u8\*)0x0A000000)  
8 bit pointer to GBA slot Save ram.

## Functions

- struct [sGBAHeader](#) [\\_\\_attribute\\_\\_\(\(packed\)\)](#) tGBAHeader  
the GBA file header format. See gbatek for more info.
- void [sysSetBusOwners](#) (bool arm9rom, bool arm9card)  
Sets the owner of the DS card bus (slot 1) and gba cart bus (slot 2).  
Only one cpu may access the device at a time.
- void [sysSetCardOwner](#) (bool arm9)  
Sets the owner of the DS card bus. Both CPUs cannot have access to

the DS card bus (slot 1).

void [sysSetCartOwner](#) ([bool](#) arm9)

Sets the owner of the GBA cart. Both CPUs cannot have access to the gba cart (slot 2).

## Variables

[u32](#) [arm7binarySize](#)

size of the arm7 binary.

[u32](#) [arm7destination](#)

destination address to where the arm7 binary should be copied.

[u32](#) [arm7executeAddress](#)

address that should be executed after the binary has been copied.

[u32](#) [arm7overlaySize](#)

File arm7 overlay size.

[u32](#) [arm7overlaySource](#)

File arm7 overlay offset.

[u32](#) [arm7romOffset](#)

offset of the arm7 binary in the nds file.

[u32](#) [arm9binarySize](#)

size of the arm9 binary.

[u32](#) [arm9destination](#)

destination address to where the arm9 binary should be copied.

[u32](#) [arm9executeAddress](#)

address that should be executed after the binary has been copied.

[u32](#) [arm9overlaySize](#)

File arm9 overlay size.

[u32](#) [arm9overlaySource](#)

File arm9 overlay offset.

[u32](#) [arm9romOffset](#)

offset of the arm9 binary in the nds file.

[u32](#) [bannerOffset](#)

offset to the banner with icon and titles etc.

[u32](#) [bfPrime1](#)

Secure Area Disable part 1.

[u32](#) [bfPrime2](#)

Secure Area Disable part 2.

[u32](#) [cardControl13](#)

Port 40001A4h setting for normal commands (used in modes 1 and 3)

[u32](#) [cardControlBF](#)

Port 40001A4h setting for KEY1 commands (used in mode 2)

[u16](#) [checksum](#)

a 16 bit checksum? (gbatek says its unused/reserved).

[u8](#) [complement](#)

complement checksum of the gba header.

[u16 crc](#)

16 bit crc/checksum of the banner.

[u32 debugRomDestination](#)

debug RAM destination.

[u32 debugRomSize](#)

debug size.

[u32 debugRomSource](#)

debug ROM offset.

[u8 devicecode](#)

used by nintendo's hardware debuggers. normally 0.

[u8 deviceSize](#)

capacity of the device ( $1 \ll n$  Mbit)

[u8 deviceType](#)

type of device in the game card

[u32 entryPoint](#)

32 bits arm opcode to jump to executable code.

[u32 fatOffset](#)

File Allocation Table (FAT) offset.

[u32 fatSize](#)

File Allocation Table (FAT) size.

[u32 filenameOffset](#)

File Name Table (FNT) offset.

[u32 filenameSize](#)

File Name Table (FNT) size.

[u8 flags](#)

bit 2: auto-boot flag.

char [gamecode](#) [0x4]

4 characters for the game code. first character is usually A or B, next 2 characters is a short title < and last character is for destination/language.

char [gameCode](#) [4]

4 characters for the game code.

char [gameTitle](#) [12]

12 characters for the game title.

[u8 gbaLogo](#) [156]

Nintendo logo needed for booting the game.

[u16 headerCRC16](#)

header checksum, CRC-16.

[u32 headerSize](#)

ROM header size.

[u8 icon](#) [512]

32\*32 icon of the game with 4 bit per pixel.

[u8 is96h](#)

fixed value that is always 96h.

[u8 logo](#) [156]

nintendo logo needed for booting the game.

[u16 logoCRC16](#)

Nintendo Logo Checksum, CRC-16.

[u16 makercode](#)

identifies the (commercial) developer.

[u16 palette](#) [16]

the pallete of the icon.

[u16 readTimeout](#)

Secure Area Loading Timeout.

[u32 romSize](#)

total size of the ROM.

[u8 romversion](#)

version of the ROM.

[u16 secureCRC16](#)

Secure Area Checksum, CRC-16.

char [title](#) [0xC]

12 characters for the game title.

[u16 titles](#) [6][128]

title of the game in 6 different languages.

[u8 unitcode](#)

identifies the required hardware.

[u8 unitCode](#)

identifies the required hardware.

[u32 unknownRAM1](#)

ARM9 Auto Load List RAM Address (?)

[u32 unknownRAM2](#)

ARM7 Auto Load List RAM Address (?)

[u8 version](#)

the version of the game.

---

## Detailed Description

Defines for many of the regions of memory on the DS as well as a few control functions for memory bus access.

---

## Function Documentation

struct [sGBAHeader](#) \_\_attribute\_\_((\_\_packed\_\_))

the GBA file header format. See gbatek for more info.

the NDS banner format. See gbatek for more information.

the NDS file header format See gbatek for more info.

```
static void sysSetBusOwners ( bool arm9rom,  
                             bool arm9card  
                             ) \[inline\]
```

Sets the owner of the DS card bus (slot 1) and gba cart bus (slot 2). Only one cpu may access the device at a time.

**Parameters:**

arm9rom if true the arm9 is the owner of slot 2, otherwise the arm7

arm9card if true the arm9 is the owner of slot 1, otherwise the arm7

**Examples:**

[card/eeprom/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void sysSetCardOwner ( bool arm9 ) \[inline\]
```

Sets the owner of the DS card bus. Both CPUs cannot have access to the DS card bus (slot 1).

**Parameters:**

arm9 if true the arm9 is the owner, otherwise the arm7

```
static void sysSetCartOwner ( bool arm9 ) \[inline\]
```

Sets the owner of the GBA cart. Both CPUs cannot have access to the gba cart (slot 2).

**Parameters:**

arm9 if true the arm9 is the owner, otherwise the arm7

---

## Variable Documentation

[u16 version](#)

the version of the game.

version of the banner.

---



# memory.h File Reference

Defines for many of the regions of memory on the DS as well as a few control functions for memory bus access. [More...](#)

```
#include "ndstypes.h"
```

## Data Structures

- struct [sGBAHeader](#)  
the GBA file header format. See gbatek for more info. [More...](#)
- struct [sNDSBanner](#)  
the NDS banner format. See gbatek for more information. [More...](#)
- struct [sNDSHeader](#)  
the NDS file header format See gbatek for more info. [More...](#)

## Defines

- #define [ALLRAM](#) (([u8\\*](#))0x00000000)  
8 bit pointer to the start of all the ram.
- #define [GBA\\_BUS](#) (([vu16 \\*](#))(0x08000000))  
16 bit volatile pointer to the GBA slot bus.
- #define [GBAROM](#) (([u16\\*](#))0x08000000)  
16 bit pointer to the GBA slot ROM.
- #define [MAINRAM16](#) (([u16\\*](#))0x02000000)  
16 bit pointer to main ram.
- #define [MAINRAM32](#) (([u32\\*](#))0x02000000)  
32 bit pointer to main ram.
- #define [MAINRAM8](#) (([u8\\*](#))0x02000000)  
8 bit pointer to main ram.
- #define [SRAM](#) (([u8\\*](#))0x0A000000)  
8 bit pointer to GBA slot Save ram.

## Functions

- struct [sGBAHeader](#) [\\_\\_attribute\\_\\_](#) ((\_\_packed\_\_)) tGBAHeader  
the GBA file header format. See gbatek for more info.
- void [sysSetBusOwners](#) ([bool](#) arm9rom, [bool](#) arm9card)  
Sets the owner of the DS card bus (slot 1) and gba cart bus (slot 2).  
Only one cpu may access the device at a time.
- void [sysSetCardOwner](#) ([bool](#) arm9)  
Sets the owner of the DS card bus. Both CPUs cannot have access to the DS card bus (slot 1).
- void [sysSetCartOwner](#) ([bool](#) arm9)  
Sets the owner of the GBA cart. Both CPUs cannot have access to the

gba cart (slot 2).

## Variables

- [u32 arm7binarySize](#)  
size of the arm7 binary.
- [u32 arm7destination](#)  
destination address to where the arm7 binary should be copied.
- [u32 arm7executeAddress](#)  
address that should be executed after the binary has been copied.
- [u32 arm7overlaySize](#)  
File arm7 overlay size.
- [u32 arm7overlaySource](#)  
File arm7 overlay offset.
- [u32 arm7romOffset](#)  
offset of the arm7 binary in the nds file.
- [u32 arm9binarySize](#)  
size of the arm9 binary.
- [u32 arm9destination](#)  
destination address to where the arm9 binary should be copied.
- [u32 arm9executeAddress](#)  
address that should be executed after the binary has been copied.
- [u32 arm9overlaySize](#)  
File arm9 overlay size.
- [u32 arm9overlaySource](#)  
File arm9 overlay offset.
- [u32 arm9romOffset](#)  
offset of the arm9 binary in the nds file.
- [u32 bannerOffset](#)  
offset to the banner with icon and titles etc.
- [u32 bfPrime1](#)  
Secure Area Disable part 1.
- [u32 bfPrime2](#)  
Secure Area Disable part 2.
- [u32 cardControl13](#)  
Port 40001A4h setting for normal commands (used in modes 1 and 3)
- [u32 cardControlBF](#)  
Port 40001A4h setting for KEY1 commands (used in mode 2)
- [u16 checksum](#)  
a 16 bit checksum? (gbatek says its unused/reserved).
- [u8 complement](#)  
complement checksum of the gba header.
- [u16 crc](#)  
16 bit crc/checksum of the banner.

[u32 debugRomDestination](#)

debug RAM destination.

[u32 debugRomSize](#)

debug size.

[u32 debugRomSource](#)

debug ROM offset.

[u8 devicecode](#)

used by nintendo's hardware debuggers. normally 0.

[u8 deviceSize](#)

capacity of the device ( $1 \ll n$  Mbit)

[u8 deviceType](#)

type of device in the game card

[u32 entryPoint](#)

32 bits arm opcode to jump to executable code.

[u32 fatOffset](#)

File Allocation Table (FAT) offset.

[u32 fatSize](#)

File Allocation Table (FAT) size.

[u32 filenameOffset](#)

File Name Table (FNT) offset.

[u32 filenameSize](#)

File Name Table (FNT) size.

[u8 flags](#)

bit 2: auto-boot flag.

char [gamecode](#) [0x4]

4 characters for the game code. first character is usually A or B, next 2 characters is a short title < and last character is for destination/language.

char [gameCode](#) [4]

4 characters for the game code.

char [gameTitle](#) [12]

12 characters for the game title.

[u8 gbaLogo](#) [156]

Nintendo logo needed for booting the game.

[u16 headerCRC16](#)

header checksum, CRC-16.

[u32 headerSize](#)

ROM header size.

[u8 icon](#) [512]

32\*32 icon of the game with 4 bit per pixel.

[u8 is96h](#)

fixed value that is always 96h.

[u8 logo](#) [156]

nintendo logo needed for booting the game.

[u16 logoCRC16](#)



) [inline]

Sets the owner of the DS card bus (slot 1) and gba cart bus (slot 2). Only one cpu may access the device at a time.

**Parameters:**

arm9rom if true the arm9 is the owner of slot 2, otherwise the arm7

arm9card if true the arm9 is the owner of slot 1, otherwise the arm7

**Examples:**

[card/eeprom/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void sysSetCardOwner ( bool arm9 ) [inline]
```

Sets the owner of the DS card bus. Both CPUs cannot have access to the DS card bus (slot 1).

**Parameters:**

arm9 if true the arm9 is the owner, otherwise the arm7

```
static void sysSetCartOwner ( bool arm9 ) [inline]
```

Sets the owner of the GBA cart. Both CPUs cannot have access to the gba cart (slot 2).

**Parameters:**

arm9 if true the arm9 is the owner, otherwise the arm7

---

## Variable Documentation

[u16 version](#)

the version of the game.

version of the banner.

---

# dma.h File Reference

Wrapper functions for direct memory access hardware. [More...](#)

```
#include "nds/ndstypes.h"
```

## Functions

- int [dmaBusy](#) ([uint8](#) channel)  
determines if the specified channel is busy
  - void [dmaCopy](#) (const void \*source, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
copies from source to destination using channel 3 of DMA available channels in half words
  - void [dmaCopyAsynch](#) (const void \*source, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
copies from source to destination using channel 3 of DMA available channels in half words. This function returns immediately after starting the transfer.
  - void [dmaCopyHalfWords](#) ([uint8](#) channel, const void \*src, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in half words
  - void [dmaCopyHalfWordsAsynch](#) ([uint8](#) channel, const void \*src, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in half words. This function returns immediately after starting the transfer.
  - void [dmaCopyWords](#) ([uint8](#) channel, const void \*src, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in words
  - void [dmaCopyWordsAsynch](#) ([uint8](#) channel, const void \*src, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in half words. This function returns immediately after starting the transfer.
  - void [dmaFillHalfWords](#) ([u16](#) value, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
fills the source with the supplied value using DMA channel 3
  - void [dmaFillWords](#) ([u32](#) value, void \*dest, [uint32](#) size)  
fills the source with the supplied value using DMA channel 3
- 

## Detailed Description

Wrapper functions for direct memory access hardware.

The DS has 4 hardware direct memory access devices per CPU which can be used to transfer or fill chunks of memory without CPU intervention. Utilizing DMA is generally faster than CPU copies (memcpy, swiCopy, for loops, etc..).

DMA has no access to data caches on the DS and as such will give unexpected results when DMAing data from main memory. The cache must be flushed as follows when using DMA to ensure proper operation on the arm9:

```
DC_FlushRange(source, sizeof(dataToCopy));  
dmaCopy(source, destination, sizeof(dataToCopy));
```

---

# Function Documentation

static dmaBusy ( [uint8](#) *channel* ) [inline]  
determines if the specified channel is busy

## Parameters:

channel the dma channel to check (0 - 3).

## Returns:

non zero if busy, 0 if channel is free

```
static void dmaCopy ( const void * source,
                     void *      dest,
                     uint32      size
                     ) [inline]
```

copies from source to destination using channel 3 of DMA available channels in half words

## Parameters:

source the source to copy from

dest the destination to copy to

size the size in bytes of the data to copy. Will be truncated to the nearest half word (2 bytes)

## Examples:

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c](#),  
[audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c](#), [capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp](#),  
[capture/ScreenShot/source/screenshot.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/256\\_color\\_bmp/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/advanced.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/basic.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/handmade.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/scrolling.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/rotation/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#).

```
static void dmaCopyAsynch ( const void * src,
                           void *      dest,
                           uint32      size
                           ) [inline]
```

copies from source to destination using channel 3 of DMA available channels in half words. This function returns immediately after starting the transfer.

## Parameters:

src the source to copy from

dest the destination to copy to

size the size in bytes of the data to copy. Will be truncated to the nearest half word (2 bytes)

```
static void dmaCopyHalfWords ( uint8      channel,
                              const void * src,
                              void *      dest,
                              uint32      size
                              ) [inline]
```

copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in half words

**Parameters:**

channel the dma channel to use (0 - 3).  
 src the source to copy from  
 dest the destination to copy to  
 size the size in bytes of the data to copy. Will be truncated to the nearest half word (2 bytes)

```
static void dmaCopyHalfWordsAsynch ( uint8      channel,
                                     const void * src,
                                     void *      dest,
                                     uint32     size
                                   )      [inline]
```

copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in half words. This function returns immediately after starting the transfer.

**Parameters:**

channel the dma channel to use (0 - 3).  
 src the source to copy from  
 dest the destination to copy to  
 size the size in bytes of the data to copy. Will be truncated to the nearest half word (2 bytes)

```
static void dmaCopyWords ( uint8      channel,
                           const void * src,
                           void *      dest,
                           uint32     size
                         )      [inline]
```

copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in words

**Parameters:**

channel the dma channel to use (0 - 3).  
 src the source to copy from  
 dest the destination to copy to  
 size the size in bytes of the data to copy. Will be truncated to the nearest word (4 bytes)

```
static void dmaCopyWordsAsynch ( uint8      channel,
                                 const void * src,
                                 void *      dest,
                                 uint32     size
                               )      [inline]
```

copies from source to destination on one of the 4 available channels in half words. This function returns immediately after starting the transfer.

**Parameters:**

channel the dma channel to use (0 - 3).  
 src the source to copy from  
 dest the destination to copy to  
 size the size in bytes of the data to copy. Will be truncated to the nearest word (4 bytes)



```
static void dmaFillHalfWords ( u16    value,  
                               void *  dest,  
                               uint32 size  
                               )          [inline]
```

fills the source with the supplied value using DMA channel 3

**Parameters:**

value the 16 byte value to fill memory with

dest the destination to copy to

size the size in bytes of the area to fill. Will be truncated to the nearest half word (2 bytes)

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#).

```
static void dmaFillWords ( u32    value,  
                           void *  dest,  
                           uint32 size  
                           )          [inline]
```

fills the source with the supplied value using DMA channel 3

**Parameters:**

value the 32 byte value to fill memory with

dest the destination to copy to

size the size in bytes of the area to fill. Will be truncated to the nearest word (4 bytes)

---

## System

# ndstypes.h File Reference

Custom types employed by libnds. [More...](#)

```
#include <stdint.h>
```

## Defines

```
#define ALIGN(m) __attribute__((aligned (m)))  
    aligns a struct (and other types?) to m, making sure that the size of  
    the struct is a multiple of m.  
#define BIT(n) (1 << (n))  
    returns a number with the nth bit set.  
#define PACKED __attribute__((packed))  
    packs a struct (and other types?) so it won't include padding bytes.
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef uint8_t byte  
    8 bit unsigned integer.  
typedef float float32  
    32 bit signed floating point number.  
typedef double float64  
    64 bit signed floating point number.  
typedef int16_t int16  
    16 bit signed integer.  
typedef int32_t int32  
    32 bit signed integer.  
typedef int64_t int64  
    64 bit signed integer.  
typedef int8_t int8  
    8 bit signed integer.  
typedef int16_t s16  
    16 bit signed integer.  
typedef int32_t s32  
    32 bit signed integer.  
typedef int64_t s64  
    64 bit signed integer.  
typedef int8_t s8  
    8 bit signed integer.  
typedef uint16_t u16  
    16 bit unsigned integer.
```

typedef uint32\_t [u32](#)  
32 bit unsigned integer.

typedef uint64\_t [u64](#)  
64 bit unsigned integer.

typedef uint8\_t [u8](#)  
8 bit unsigned integer.

typedef uint16\_t [uint16](#)  
16 bit unsigned integer.

typedef uint32\_t [uint32](#)  
32 bit unsigned integer.

typedef uint64\_t [uint64](#)  
64 bit unsigned integer.

typedef uint8\_t [uint8](#)  
8 bit unsigned integer.

typedef volatile  
[float32](#) [vfloat32](#)  
32 bit volatile signed floating point number.

typedef volatile  
[float64](#) [vfloat64](#)  
64 bit volatile signed floating point number.

typedef volatile  
int16\_t [vint16](#)  
16 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef volatile  
int32\_t [vint32](#)  
32 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef volatile  
int64\_t [vint64](#)  
64 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef volatile  
int8\_t [vint8](#)  
8 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef void(\* [VoidFn](#) )(void)  
a function pointer that takes no arguments and doesn't return anything.

typedef volatile  
[s16](#) [vs16](#)  
16 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef volatile  
[s32](#) [vs32](#)  
32 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef volatile  
[s64](#) [vs64](#)  
64 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef volatile [s8](#) [vs8](#)

8 bit volatile signed integer.

typedef volatile

[u16](#) [vu16](#)

16 bit volatile unsigned integer.

typedef volatile

[u32](#) [vu32](#)

32 bit volatile unsigned integer.

typedef volatile

[u64](#) [vu64](#)

64 bit volatile unsigned integer.

typedef volatile [u8](#) [vu8](#)

8 bit volatile unsigned integer.

typedef volatile

uint16\_t [vuint16](#)

16 bit volatile unsigned integer.

typedef volatile

uint32\_t [vuint32](#)

32 bit volatile unsigned integer.

typedef volatile

uint64\_t [vuint64](#)

64 bit volatile unsigned integer.

typedef volatile

uint8\_t [vuint8](#)

8 bit volatile unsigned integer.

## Enumerations

enum [bool](#)

C++ compatible bool for C.

---

# system.h File Reference

NDS hardware definitions. These definitions are usually only touched during the initialization of the program. [More...](#)

```
#include "ndstypes.h"
```

## Data Structures

- struct [RTCtime](#)  
struct containing time and day of the real time clock. [More...](#)
- struct [sysVectors\\_t](#)  
A struct with all the CPU exeption vectors. each member contains an ARM instuction that will be executed when an exeption occured. [More...](#)
- struct [tPERSONAL\\_DATA](#)  
User's DS settings. Defines the structure the DS firmware uses for transfer of the user's settings to the booted program. [More...](#)

## Defines

- #define [HALT\\_CR](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x04000300)  
Halt control register.
- #define [PersonalData](#) ((PERSONAL\_DATA\*)0x2FFFC80)  
Default location for the user's personal data (see PERSONAL\_DATA).
- #define [REG\\_DISPSTAT](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x04000004)  
LCD status register.
- #define [REG\\_POWERCNT](#) \*(vu16\*)0x4000304  
Power control register.
- #define [REG\\_VCOUNT](#) (\*(vu16\*)0x4000006)  
Current display scanline.

## Typedefs

- typedef struct  
[sysVectors\\_t](#) [sysVectors](#)  
A struct with all the CPU exeption vectors. each member contains an ARM instuction that will be executed when an exeption occured.

## Enumerations

- enum [ARM7\\_power](#) {  
    [POWER\\_SOUND](#) = (1 << ( 0 )),  
    [PM\\_CONTROL\\_REG](#) = 0,  
    [PM\\_BATTERY\\_REG](#) = 1,  
    [PM\\_AMPLIFIER\\_REG](#) = 2,  
    [PM\\_READ\\_REGISTER](#) = (1<<7),  
    [PM\\_AMP\\_OFFSET](#) = 2,

```

PM_GAIN_OFFSET = 3,
PM_BACKLIGHT_LEVEL = 4,
PM_GAIN_20 = 0,
PM_GAIN_40 = 1,
PM_GAIN_80 = 2,
PM_GAIN_160 = 3,
PM_AMP_ON = 1,
PM_AMP_OFF = 0
}

```

Power-controlled hardware devices accessible to the ARM7.

[More...](#)

```

enum BACKLIGHT_LEVELS {
    BACKLIGHT_LOW,
    BACKLIGHT_MED,
    BACKLIGHT_HIGH,
    BACKLIGHT_MAX
}

```

Backlight level settings. Note, these are only available on DS Lite.

[More...](#)

```

enum DISP_BITS {
    DISP_IN_VBLANK = (1 << ( 0 )),
    DISP_IN_HBLANK = (1 << ( 1 )),
    DISP_YTRIGGERED = (1 << ( 2 )),
    DISP_VBLANK_IRQ = (1 << ( 3 )),
    DISP_HBLANK_IRQ = (1 << ( 4 )),
    DISP_YTRIGGER_IRQ = (1 << ( 5 ))
}

```

LCD Status register bitdefines.

[More...](#)

```

enum PM_Bits {
    PM_SOUND_AMP = (1 << ( 0 )),
    PM_SOUND_MUTE = (1 << ( 1 )),
    PM_BACKLIGHT_BOTTOM = (1 << ( 2 )),
    PM_BACKLIGHT_TOP = (1 << ( 3 )),
    PM_SYSTEM_PWR = (1 << ( 6 )),
    POWER_LCD = (1 << ( 16 )) | (1 << ( 0 )),
    POWER_2D_A = (1 << ( 16 )) | (1 << ( 1 )),
    POWER_MATRIX = (1 << ( 16 )) | (1 << ( 2 )),
    POWER_3D_CORE = (1 << ( 16 )) | (1 << ( 3 )),
    POWER_2D_B = (1 << ( 16 )) | (1 << ( 9 )),
    POWER_SWAP_LCDS = (1 << ( 16 )) | (1 << ( 15 )),
    POWER_ALL_2D = (1 << ( 16 )) | POWER_LCD | POWER_2D_A |
    POWER_2D_B,
    POWER_ALL = (1 << ( 16 )) | POWER_ALL_2D |
    POWER_3D_CORE | POWER_MATRIX
}

```

Power Management control bits.

[More...](#)

## Functions

```
struct
tPERSONAL_DAT
    A __attribute__((packed)) PERSONAL_DATA
        User's DS settings. Defines the structure the DS firmware uses for
        transfer of the user's settings to the booted program.
    u32 getBatteryLevel ()
        gets the DS Battery level
static void lcdMainOnBottom (void)
    Forces the main core to display on the bottom.
static void lcdMainOnTop (void)
    Forces the main core to display on the top.
static void lcdSwap (void)
    Switches the screens.
void ledBlink (int bm)
    Set the LED blink mode.
void * memCached (void *address)
    returns a cached mirror of an address.
void * memUncached (void *address)
    returns an uncached mirror of an address.
void powerOff (int bits)
    Turns off specified hardware.
void powerOn (int bits)
    Turns on specified hardware.
void setVectorBase (int highVector)
    Set the arm9 vector base.
static void SetYtrigger (int Yvalue)
    sets the Y trigger(?)
static void systemShutDown (void)
    Powers down the DS.
void systemSleep (void)
    Causes the nds to go to sleep. The nds will be reawakened when the
    lid is opened.
```

## Variables

[u8 alarmHour](#)  
What hour the alarm clock is set to (0-23).

[u8 alarmMinute](#)  
What minute the alarm clock is set to (0-59).

[u8 birthDay](#)  
The user's birth day (1-31).

[u8 birthMonth](#)

The user's birth month (1-12).

[u16 calX1](#)

Touchscreen calibration: first X touch.

[u8 calX1px](#)

Touchscreen calibration: first X touch pixel.

[u16 calX2](#)

Touchscreen calibration: second X touch.

[u8 calX2px](#)

Touchscreen calibration: second X touch pixel.

[u16 calY1](#)

Touchscreen calibration: first Y touch.

[u8 calY1px](#)

Touchscreen calibration: first X touch pixel.

[u16 calY2](#)

Touchscreen calibration: second Y touch.

[u8 calY2px](#)

Touchscreen calibration: second Y touch pixel.

[s16 message](#) [26]

The user's message.

[u16 messageLen](#)

The length of the user's message in characters.

[s16 name](#) [10]

The user's name in UTF-16 format.

[u16 nameLen](#)

The length of the user's name in characters.

[u32 rtcOffset](#)

Real Time Clock offset.

[u8 theme](#)

The user's theme color (0-15).

---

## Detailed Description

NDS hardware definitions. These definitions are usually only touched during the initialization of the program.

---

## Define Documentation

`#define HALT_CR (*(vu16*)0x04000300)`

Halt control register.

Writing 0x40 to HALT\_CR activates GBA mode. HALT\_CR can only be accessed via the BIOS.



```
#define REG_POWERCNT (*(vu16*)0x4000304
```

Power control register.

This register controls what hardware should be turned on or off.

---

## Typedef Documentation

typedef struct [sysVectors\\_t](#) [sysVectors](#)

A struct with all the CPU exeption vectors. each member contains an ARM instuction that will be executed when an exeption occured.

See gbatek for more information.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [ARM7\\_power](#)

Power-controlled hardware devices accessable to the ARM7.

Note that these should only be used when programming for the ARM7. Trying to boot up these hardware devices via the ARM9 would lead to unexpected results. ARM7 only.

### Enumerator:

<i>POWER_SOUND</i>	Controls the power for the sound controller.
<i>PM_CONTROL_REG</i>	Selects the PM control register.
<i>PM_BATTERY_REG</i>	Selects the PM battery register.
<i>PM_AMPLIFIER_REG</i>	Selects the PM amplifier register.
<i>PM_READ_REGISTER</i>	Selects the PM read register.
<i>PM_AMP_OFFSET</i>	Selects the PM amp register.
<i>PM_GAIN_OFFSET</i>	Selects the PM gain register.
<i>PM_BACKLIGHT_LEVEL</i>	Selects the DS Lite backlight register.
<i>PM_GAIN_20</i>	Sets the mic gain to 20db.
<i>PM_GAIN_40</i>	Sets the mic gain to 40db.
<i>PM_GAIN_80</i>	Sets the mic gain to 80db.
<i>PM_GAIN_160</i>	Sets the mic gain to 160db.
<i>PM_AMP_ON</i>	Turns the sound amp on.
<i>PM_AMP_OFF</i>	Turns the sound amp off.

enum [BACKLIGHT\\_LEVELS](#)

Backlight level settings. Note, these are only available on DS Lite.

**Enumerator:**

*BACKLIGHT\_LOW* low backlight setting.

*BACKLIGHT\_MED* medium backlight setting.

*BACKLIGHT\_HIGH* high backlight setting.

*BACKLIGHT\_MAX* max backlight setting.

enum [DISP\\_BITS](#)

LCD Status register bitdefines.

**Enumerator:**

*DISP\_IN\_VBLANK* The display currently in a vertical blank.

*DISP\_IN\_HBLANK* The display currently in a horizontal blank.

*DISP\_YTRIGGERED* Current scanline and DISP\_Y match.

*DISP\_VBLANK\_IRQ* Interrupt on vertical blank.

*DISP\_HBLANK\_IRQ* Interrupt on horizontal blank.

*DISP\_YTRIGGER\_IRQ* Interrupt when current scanline and DISP\_Y match.

enum [PM\\_Bits](#)

Power Management control bits.

**Enumerator:**

*PM\_SOUND\_AMP* Power the sound hardware (needed to hear stuff in GBA mode too).

*PM\_SOUND\_MUTE* Mute the main speakers, headphone output will still work.

*PM\_BACKLIGHT\_BOTTOM* Enable the top backlight if set.

*PM\_BACKLIGHT\_TOP* Enable the bottom backlight if set.

*PM\_SYSTEM\_PWR* Turn the power \*off\* if set.

*POWER\_LCD* Controls the power for both LCD screens.

*POWER\_2D\_A* Controls the power for the main 2D core.

*POWER\_MATRIX* Controls the power for the 3D matrix.

*POWER\_3D\_CORE* Controls the power for the main 3D core.

*POWER\_2D\_B* Controls the power for the sub 2D core.

<code>POWER_SWAP_LCDS</code>	Controls which screen should use the main core.
<code>POWER_ALL_2D</code>	power just 2D hardware.
<code>POWER_ALL</code>	power everything.

---

## Function Documentation

struct [tPERSONAL\\_DATA](#) \_\_attribute\_\_((packed))

User's DS settings. Defines the structure the DS firmware uses for transfer of the user's settings to the booted program.

holds a red green blue triplet

Theme/Color values:

- 0 = Gray
- 1 = Brown
- 2 = Red
- 3 = Pink
- 4 = Orange
- 5 = Yellow
- 6 = Yellow/Green-ish
- 7 = Green
- 8 = Dark Green
- 9 = Green/Blue-ish
- 10 = Light Blue
- 11 = Blue
- 12 = Dark Blue
- 13 = Dark Purple
- 14 = Purple
- 15 = Purple/Red-ish

Language values:

- 0 = Japanese
- 1 = English
- 2 = French
- 3 = German
- 4 = Italian
- 5 = Spanish
- 6 = Chinese(?)
- 7 = Unknown/Reserved

< User's language.

< GBA screen selection (lower screen if set, otherwise upper screen).

< Brightness level at power on, dslite.

< The DS should boot from the DS cart or GBA cart automatically if one is inserted.

< User Settings Lost (0=Normal, 1=Prompt/Settings Lost)

`void ledBlink ( int bm )`

Set the LED blink mode.

Arm9 only

**Parameters:**

*bm* What to power on.

`void* memCached ( void * address )`

returns a cached mirror of an address.

**Parameters:**

*address* an address.

**Returns:**

a pointer to the cached mirror of that address.

`void* memUncached ( void * address )`

returns an uncached mirror of an address.

**Parameters:**

*address* an address.

**Returns:**

a pointer to the uncached mirror of that address.

`void powerOff ( int bits )`

Turns off specified hardware.

May be called from arm7 or arm9 (arm9 power bits will be ignored by arm7, arm7 power bits will be passed to the arm7 from the arm9).

**Parameters:**

*bits* What to power on.

`static void powerOn ( int bits ) [inline]`

Turns on specified hardware.

May be called from arm7 or arm9 (arm9 power bits will be ignored by arm7, arm7 power bits will be passed to the arm7 from the arm9).

**Parameters:**

*bits* What to power on.

`void setVectorBase ( int highVector )`

Set the arm9 vector base.

Arm9 only

**Parameters:**

*highVector* high vector

`static void SetYtrigger ( int Yvalue ) [inline, static]`

sets the Y trigger(?)

**Parameters:**

*Yvalue* the value for the Y trigger.

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/streaming/source/main.c](http://audio/maxmod/streaming/source/main.c).

`void systemSleep ( void )`

Causes the nds to go to sleep. The nds will be reawakened when the lid is opened.

**Note:**

By default, this is automatically called when closing the lid.

---

# bios.h File Reference

Nintendo DS Bios functions. [More...](#)

```
#include "nds/ndstypes.h"
```

## Data Structures

struct [DecompressionStream](#)

A struct that contains callback function pointers used by the decompression functions. [More...](#)

struct [UnpackStruct](#)

A struct and struct pointer with information about unpacking data. [More...](#)

## Defines

#define [COPY\\_MODE\\_COPY](#) (0)

copy a range of memory to another piece of memory

#define [COPY\\_MODE\\_FILL](#) BIT(24)

fill a piece of memory with a value.

#define [COPY\\_MODE\\_HWORD](#) (0)

copy in chunks of halfword size.

#define [COPY\\_MODE\\_WORD](#) BIT(26)

copy in chunks of word size.

## Typedefs

typedef [u8](#)(\* [getBytesCallback](#) )(u8 \*source)

Should returns a raw byte of the stream.

typedef int(\* [getHeaderCallback](#) )(u8 \*source, [u16](#) \*dest, [u32](#) arg)

Should return the header of a compressed stream of bytes.

typedef int(\* [getResultCallback](#) )(u8 \*source)

Should verify the result after data got decompressed.

typedef struct

[DecompressionStream](#) [TDecompressionStream](#)

A struct that contains callback function pointers used by the decompression functions.

typedef struct [UnpackStruct](#) [TUnpackStruct](#)

A struct and struct pointer with information about unpacking data.

## Functions

void [swiChangeSoundBias](#) (int enabled, int delay)

increments or decrements the sound bias once per delay.

void [swiCopy](#) (const void \*source, void \*dest, int [flags](#))  
copies or fills some memory.

[uint16 swiCRC16](#) ([uint16 crc](#), void \*data, [uint32](#) size)  
calculates a CRC-16 checksum.

void [swiDecodeDelta16](#) (void \*source, void \*destination)  
Decodes a stream of bytes based on the difference of the bytes.

void [swiDecodeDelta8](#) (void \*source, void \*destination)  
Decodes a stream of bytes based on the difference of the bytes.

int [swiDecompressHuffman](#) (void \*source, void \*destination, [uint32](#) toGetSize, [TDecompressionStream](#) \*stream)  
Decompresses Huffman compressed data.

int [swiDecompressLZSSVram](#) (void \*source, void \*destination, [uint32](#) toGetSize, [TDecompressionStream](#) \*stream)  
Decompresses LZSS compressed data vram safe.

void [swiDecompressLZSSWram](#) (void \*source, void \*destination)  
Decompresses LZSS compressed data.

int [swiDecompressRLEVram](#) (void \*source, void \*destination, [uint32](#) toGetSize, [TDecompressionStream](#) \*stream)  
Decompresses RLE compressed data vram safe.

void [swiDecompressRLEWram](#) (void \*source, void \*destination)  
Decompresses RLE compressed data.

void [swiDelay](#) ([uint32](#) duration)  
delays the code.

int [swiDivide](#) (int numerator, int divisor)  
divides 2 numbers.

void [swiDivMod](#) (int numerator, int divisor, int \*result, int \*remainder)  
divides 2 numbers and stores both the result and the remainder.

void [swiFastCopy](#) (const void \*source, void \*dest, int [flags](#))  
copies or fills some memory. can only copy in word chunks.

[uint16 swiGetPitchTable](#) (int index)  
Returns an entry in the pitch table.

[uint16 swiGetSineTable](#) (int index)  
Returns an entry in the sine table.

[uint8 swiGetVolumeTable](#) (int index)  
Returns an entry in the volume table.

void [swiHalt](#) (void)  
Halts the CPU untill an interrupt occurs.

int [swiIsDebugger](#) (void)  
returns 0 if running on a nintendo hardware debugger.

int [swiRemainder](#) (int numerator, int divisor)  
calculate the remainder of an division.

void [swiSetHaltCR](#) ([uint32](#) data)  
Writes a word of the data to 0x04000300:32.

void [swiSetHaltCR](#) ([uint8](#) data)  
Writes a byte of the data to 0x04000301:8.

void [swiSleep](#) (void)  
Halts the CPU and most of the hardware until an interrupt occurs.

void [swiSoftReset](#) (void)  
resets the DS.

int [swiSqrt](#) (int value)  
calculates the square root.

void [swiSwitchToGBAMode](#) (void)  
Switches the DS to GBA mode.

void [swiUnpackBits](#) ([uint8](#) \*source, [uint32](#) \*destination, [PUnpackStruct](#) params)  
Unpack data stored in multiple elements in a byte to a larger space.

void [swiWaitForIRQ](#) (void)  
wait for any interrupt.

---

## Detailed Description

Nintendo DS Bios functions.

See gbatek for more information.

---

## Typedef Documentation

typedef [u8](#)(\* [getBytesCallback](#))([u8](#) \*source)  
Should return a raw byte of the stream.

### Parameters:

source A pointer to the byte.

### Returns:

A byte.

typedef int(\* [getHeaderCallback](#))([u8](#) \*source, [u16](#) \*dest, [u32](#) arg)  
Should return the header of a compressed stream of bytes.

The result is a word, with the size of decompressed data in bits 8-31, and bits 0-7 are ignored. This value is also returned by the bios function, unless getResult is non-NULL and returns a negative value. This usually returns the 4 bytes that source points to.

### Parameters:

source A pointer to the compressed data.

dest A pointer to the space where the decompressed data should be copied to.



arg      A callback value that gets passed to the bios function.

**Returns:**

The header of the compressed data containing the length of the data and the compression type.

```
typedef int(* getResultCallback)(u8 *source)
```

Should verify the result after data got decompressed.

getResult is used to provide a result for the bios function, given the source pointer after all data has been read (or if getSize < 0). Its value is only returned if negative, otherwise the typical result is used, so it is likely some sort of error-checking procedure.

**Parameters:**

source    The current source address.

**Returns:**

0 if it went right, or a negative number if something went wrong. value will be returned from bios function if value is negative.

---

## Function Documentation

```
void swiChangeSoundBias ( int  enabled,
                          int  delay
                          )
```

increments or decrements the sound bias once per delay.

**Parameters:**

enabled    0 to decrement it until it reaches 0x000, 1 to increment it until it reaches 0x200.

delay      Is in the same units of time as swiDelay.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

```
void swiCopy ( const void * source,
               void *      dest,
               int          flags
               )
```

copies or fills some memory.

**Parameters:**

source    pointer to transfer source or pointer to value to fill the memory with.

dest      pointer to transfer destination.

flags     bits(0-20): size of data to copy/fill in words, or'd with the copy mode size (word or halfword) and type (copy or fill).

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#).

[uint16](#) swiCRC16 ( [uint16](#) *crc*,

```

        void * data,
        uint32 size
    )

```

calculates a CRC-16 checksum.

**Parameters:**

*crc* starting CRC-16 value.  
*data* pointer to data (processed nibble by nibble)  
*size* size in bytes.

**Returns:**

the CRC-16 after the data has been processed.

```

void swiDecodeDelta16 ( void * source,
                       void * destination
                       )

```

Decodes a stream of bytes based on the difference of the bytes.

**Parameters:**

*source* Pointer to a header word, followed by encoded data. word(31..8) = size of data (in bytes). word(7..0) = ignored.  
*destination* Destination address.

**Note:**

Writes data a halfword at a time.  
 ARM9 exclusive.

```

void swiDecodeDelta8 ( void * source,
                      void * destination
                      )

```

Decodes a stream of bytes based on the difference of the bytes.

**Parameters:**

*source* Pointer to a header word, followed by encoded data. word(31..8) = size of data (in bytes). word(7..0) = ignored.  
*destination* Destination address.

**Note:**

Writes data a byte at a time.  
 ARM9 exclusive.

```

int swiDecompressHuffman ( void * source,
                           void * destination,
                           uint32 toGetSize,
                           TDecompressionStream * stream
                           )

```

Decompresses Huffman compressed data.

**Parameters:**

*source* Pointer to source data (always goes through the function pointers, so could just be an offset).  
*destination* Pointer to destination.

toGetSize	Callback value that is passed to getHeaderCallback function pointer.
stream	Pointer to struct with callback function pointers.

### Returns:

The length of the decompressed data, or a signed errorcode from the Open/Close functions.

### See also:

[decompress.h](#)

```
int swiDecompressLZSSVram ( void *          source,
                           void *          destination,
                           uint32      toGetSize,
                           TDecompressionStream * stream
                           )
```

Decompresses LZSS compressed data vram safe.

### Parameters:

source	Pointer to source data (always goes through the function pointers, so could just be an offset).
destination	Pointer to destination.
toGetSize	Callback value that is passed to getHeaderCallback function pointer.
stream	Pointer to struct with callback function pointers.

### Returns:

The length of the decompressed data, or a signed errorcode from the Open/Close functions.

**Note:**

Writes data a halfword at a time.

**See also:**

[decompress.h](#)

```
void swiDecompressLZSSWram ( void * source,
                             void * destination
                           )
```

Decompresses LZSS compressed data.

### Parameters:

source	pointer to a header word, followed by compressed data. bit 0-7 of header is ignored. bit 8-31 of header is size of uncompressed data in bytes.
destination	destination address.

**Note:**

Writes data a byte at a time.

**See also:**

decompress.h

```
int swiDecompressRLEVram ( void *      source,
                          void *      destination,
```

```

uint32                                     toGetSize,
TDecompressionStream * stream
)

```

Decompresses RLE compressed data vram safe.

compressed data format: bit(7): 0= uncompressed, 1= compressed. bit(0-6) when uncompressed: run length - 1, followed by run\_length bytes of true data. bit(0-6) when compressed: run length - 3, followed by one byte of true data, to be repeated.

**Parameters:**

source        Pointer to source data (always goes through the function pointers, so could just be an offset).  
destination   Pointer to destination.  
toGetSize     Callback value that is passed to getHeaderCallback function pointer.  
stream        Pointer to struct with callback function pointers.

**Returns:**

The length of the decompressed data, or a signed errorcode from the Open/Close functions.

**Note:**

Writes data a halfword at a time.

**See also:**

[decompress.h](#)

```

void swiDecompressRLEWram ( void * source,
                           void * destination
                           )

```

Decompresses RLE compressed data.

compressed data format: bit(7): 0= uncompressed, 1= compressed. bit(0-6) when uncompressed: run length - 1, followed by run\_length bytes of true data. bit(0-6) when compressed: run length - 3, followed by one byte of true data, to be repeated.

**Parameters:**

source        pointer to a header word, followed by compressed data. bit 0-7 of header is ignored. bit 8-31 of header is size of uncompressed data in bytes.  
destination   destination address.

**Note:**

Writes data a byte at a time.

**See also:**

[decompress.h](#)

```

void swiDelay ( uint32 duration )
delays the code.

```

Delays for for a period X + Y\*duration where X is the swi overhead and Y is a cycle of

```

loop:
    sub r0, #1
    bgt loop

```

of thumb fetches in BIOS memory

**Parameters:**

duration length of delay

**Note:**

Duration should be 1 or more, a duration of 0 is a huge delay.

```
int swiDivide ( int numerator,  
               int divisor  
               )
```

divides 2 numbers.

**Parameters:**

numerator signed integer to divide

divisor signed integer to divide by

**Returns:**

numerator / divisor

```
void swiDivMod ( int numerator,  
                int divisor,  
                int * result,  
                int * remainder  
                )
```

divides 2 numbers and stores both the result and the remainder.

**Parameters:**

numerator signed integer to divide

divisor signed integer to divide by

result pointer to integer set to numerator / divisor

remainder pointer to integer set to numerator % divisor

```
void swiFastCopy ( const void * source,  
                  void * dest,  
                  int flags  
                  )
```

copies or fills some memory. can only copy in word chunks.

**Parameters:**

source pointer to transfer source or pointer to value to fill the memory with.

dest pointer to transfer destination.

flags bits(0-20): size of data to copy/fill in words, or'd with the type (copy or fill).

**Note:**

Transfers more quickly than swiCopy, but has higher interrupt latency.

[uint16](#) swiGetPitchTable ( int *index* )

Returns an entry in the pitch table.

**Parameters:**

index The index of the pitch table (0-767).

**Returns:**

The entry.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

[uint16](#) swiGetSineTable ( int *index* )

Returns an entry in the sine table.

**Parameters:**

index The index of the sine table (0-63).

**Returns:**

The entry.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

[uint8](#) swiGetVolumeTable ( int *index* )

Returns an entry in the volume table.

**Parameters:**

index The index of the volume table (0-723).

**Returns:**

The entry.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

void swiHalt ( void )

Halts the CPU untill an interupt occures.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

int swiIsDebugger ( void )

returns 0 if running on a nintendo hardware debugger.

**Returns:**

0 if running on a debugger (8 MB of ram instead of 4 MB), else some other number.

int swiRemainder ( int *numerator*,  
                          int *divisor*  
                          )

calculate the remainder of an division.

**Parameters:**

numerator signed integer to divide

divisor signed integer to divide by

**Returns:**

numerator % divisor

void swiSetHaltCR ( [uint32](#) *data* )

Writes a word of the data to 0x04000300:32.

**Parameters:**

data the word to write.

**Note:**

This is on the ARM9, but works differently then the ARM7 function!

```
void swiSetHaltCR ( uint8 data )
```

Writes a byte of the data to 0x04000301:8.

**Parameters:**

data The byte to write.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

```
void swiSleep ( void )
```

Halts the CPU and most of the hardware untill an interrupt occurs.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

```
int swiSqrt ( int value )
```

calculates the square root.

**Parameters:**

value the value to calculate.

**Returns:**

the square root of the value as an integer.

**Note:**

use fixed point math if you want more accuracy.

```
void swiSwitchToGBAMode ( void )
```

Switches the DS to GBA mode.

**Note:**

ARM7 exclusive.

```
void swiUnpackBits ( uint8 *      source,  
                    uint32 *      destination,  
                    PUnpackStruct params  
                    )
```

Unpack data stored in multiple elements in a byte to a larger space.

i.e. 8 elements per byte (i.e. b/w font), into 1 element per byte.

**Parameters:**

source Source address.

destination destination address (word aligned).

params pointer to an [UnpackStruct](#).

```
void swiWaitForIRQ ( void )
```

wait for any interrupt.

**Note:**  
ARM9 exclusive.

---



# cache.h File Reference

ARM9 cache control functions. [More...](#)

```
#include "nds/ndstypes.h"
```

## Functions

void [DC\\_FlushAll](#) ()  
flush the entire data cache to memory.

void [DC\\_FlushRange](#) (const void \*base, [u32](#) size)  
flush the data cache for a range of addresses to memory.

void [DC\\_InvalidateAll](#) ()  
invalidate the entire data cache.

void [DC\\_InvalidateRange](#) (const void \*base, [u32](#) size)  
invalidate the data cache for a range of addresses.

void [IC\\_InvalidateAll](#) ()  
invalidate entire instruction cache.

void [IC\\_InvalidateRange](#) (const void \*base, [u32](#) size)  
invalidate the instruction cache for a range of addresses.

---

## Detailed Description

ARM9 cache control functions.

---

## Function Documentation

`DC_FlushRange` ( const void \* *base*,  
                  [u32](#)          *size*  
                  )  
flush the data cache for a range of addresses to memory.

### Parameters:

base base address of the region to flush.  
size size of the region to flush.

### Examples:

[capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp](#).

`DC_InvalidateRange` ( const void \* *base*,  
                      [u32](#)          *size*  
                      )  
invalidate the data cache for a range of addresses.

### Parameters:

base base address of the region to invalidate

size size of the region to invalidate.

**Examples:**

[audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c](#).

```
IC_InvalidateRange ( const void * base,  
                     u32          size  
                     )
```

invalidate the instruction cache for a range of addresses.

**Parameters:**

base base address of the region to invalidate

size size of the region to invalidate.

---

# interrupts.h File Reference

nds interrupt support. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
```

## Defines

```
#define IRQ\_TIMER(n) (1 << ((n) + 3))  
    returns the mask for a given timer.  
  
#define MAX\_INTERRUPTS 25  
    maximum number of interrupts.  
  
#define REG\_IE (*(vuint32\*)0x04000210)  
    Interrupt Enable Register.  
  
#define REG\_IF (*(vuint32\*)0x04000214)  
    Interrupt Flag Register.  
  
#define REG\_IME (*(vuint32\*)0x04000208)  
    Interrupt Master Enable Register.
```

## Enumerations

```
enum IME\_VALUE {  
    IME\_DISABLE = 0,  
    IME\_ENABLE = 1  
}  
values allowed for REG_IME
```

[More...](#)

```
enum IRQ\_MASKS {  
    IRQ\_VBLANK = BIT(0),  
    IRQ\_HBLANK = BIT(1),  
    IRQ\_VCOUNT = BIT(2),  
    IRQ\_TIMER0 = BIT(3),  
    IRQ\_TIMER1 = BIT(4),  
    IRQ\_TIMER2 = BIT(5),  
    IRQ\_TIMER3 = BIT(6),  
    IRQ\_NETWORK = BIT(7),  
    IRQ\_DMA0 = BIT(8),  
    IRQ\_DMA1 = BIT(9),  
    IRQ\_DMA2 = BIT(10),  
    IRQ\_DMA3 = BIT(11),  
    IRQ\_KEYS = BIT(12),  
    IRQ\_CART = BIT(13),  
    IRQ\_IPC\_SYNC = BIT(16),  
    IRQ\_FIFO\_EMPTY = BIT(17),  
    IRQ\_FIFO\_NOT\_EMPTY = BIT(18),  
    IRQ\_CARD = BIT(19),  
    IRQ\_CARD\_LINE = BIT(20),  
    IRQ\_GEOMETRY\_FIFO = BIT(21),
```

```

IRQ\_LID = BIT(22),
IRQ\_SPI = BIT(23),
IRQ\_WIFI = BIT(24),
IRQ\_ALL = (~0)
}

```

values allowed for REG\_IE and REG\_IF

[More...](#)

```
enum IRQ\_MASKSAUX { IRQ\_I2C = BIT(6) }
```

values allowed for REG\_AUXIE and REG\_AUXIF

[More...](#)

## Functions

```

void irqClear (u32 irq)
    remove the handler associated with the interrupt mask irq.
void irqDisable (u32 irq)
    Prevent the given interrupt from occurring.
void irqEnable (u32 irq)
    Allow the given interrupt to occur.
void irqInit ()
    Initialise the libnds interrupt system.
void irqInitHandler (VoidFn handler)
    Install a user interrupt dispatcher.
void irqSet (u32 irq, VoidFn handler)
    Add a handler for the given interrupt mask.
VoidFn setPowerButtonCB (VoidFn CB)
    set callback for DSi Powerbutton press
void swiIntrWait (u32 waitForSet, uint32 flags)
    wait for interrupt(s) to occur
void swiWaitForVBlank (void)
    Wait for vblank interrupt.

```

---

## Detailed Description

nds interrupt support.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IRQ\_TIMER ( n ) (1 << ((n) + 3))
```

returns the mask for a given timer.

### Parameters:

n the timer.

**Returns:**

the bitmask.

```
#define REG_IE (*(vuint32*)0x04000210)
```

Interrupt Enable Register.

This is the activation mask for the internal interrupts. Unless the corresponding bit is set, the IRQ will be masked out.

```
#define REG_IF (*(vuint32*)0x04000214)
```

Interrupt Flag Register.

Since there is only one hardware interrupt vector, the IF register contains flags to indicate when a particular of interrupt has occurred. To acknowledge processing interrupts, set IF to the value of the interrupt handled.

```
#define REG_IME (*(vuint32*)0x04000208)
```

Interrupt Master Enable Register.

When bit 0 is clear, all interrupts are masked. When it is 1, interrupts will occur if not masked out in REG\_IE.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [IME\\_VALUE](#)

values allowed for REG\_IME

**Enumerator:**

*IME\_DISABLE* Disable all interrupts.

*IME\_ENABLE* Enable all interrupts not masked out in REG\_IE

enum [IRQ\\_MASKS](#)

values allowed for REG\_IE and REG\_IF

**Enumerator:**

*IRQ\_VBLANK* vertical blank interrupt mask

*IRQ\_HBLANK* horizontal blank interrupt mask

*IRQ\_VCOUNT* vcount match interrupt mask

*IRQ\_TIMER0* timer 0 interrupt mask

*IRQ\_TIMER1* timer 1 interrupt mask

*IRQ\_TIMER2* timer 2 interrupt mask

*IRQ\_TIMER3* timer 3 interrupt mask

*IRQ\_NETWORK* serial interrupt mask

<i>IRQ_DMA0</i>	DMA 0 interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_DMA1</i>	DMA 1 interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_DMA2</i>	DMA 2 interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_DMA3</i>	DMA 3 interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_KEYS</i>	Keypad interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_CART</i>	GBA cartridge interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_IPC_SYNC</i>	IPC sync interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_FIFO_EMPTY</i>	Send FIFO empty interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY</i>	Receive FIFO not empty interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_CARD</i>	interrupt mask DS Card Slot
<i>IRQ_CARD_LINE</i>	interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_GEOMETRY_FIFO</i>	geometry FIFO interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_LID</i>	interrupt mask DS hinge
<i>IRQ_SPI</i>	SPI interrupt mask
<i>IRQ_WIFI</i>	WIFI interrupt mask (ARM7)
<i>IRQ_ALL</i>	'mask' for all interrupt

enum [IRQ\\_MASKSAUX](#)

values allowed for REG\_AUXIE and REG\_AUXIF

#### Enumerator:

*IRQ\_I2C* I2C interrupt mask (DSi ARM7)

## Function Documentation

irqClear ( [u32](#) irq )

remove the handler associated with the interrupt mask irq.

#### Parameters:

irq Mask associated with the interrupt.

irqDisable ( [u32](#) irq )

Prevent the given interrupt from occurring.

#### Parameters:

irq The set of interrupt masks to disable.

**Note:**

Specify multiple interrupts to disable by ORing several IRQ\_MASKS.

irqEnable ( [u32](#) irq )

Allow the given interrupt to occur.

**Parameters:**

irq The set of interrupt masks to enable.

**Note:**

Specify multiple interrupts to enable by ORing several IRQ\_MASKS.

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/streaming/source/main.c](#).

irqInit ( )

Initialise the libnds interrupt system.

This function is called internally (prior to main()) to set up irqs on the ARM9. It must be called on the ARM7 prior to installing irq handlers.

irqInitHandler ( [VoidFn](#) handler )

Install a user interrupt dispatcher.

This function installs the main interrupt function, all interrupts are serviced through this routine. For most purposes the libnds interrupt dispatcher should be used in preference to user code unless you know *\*exactly\** what you're doing.

**Parameters:**

handler Address of the function to use as an interrupt dispatcher

**Note:**

the function *\*must\** be ARM code

irqSet ( [u32](#) irq,  
          [VoidFn](#) handler  
          )

Add a handler for the given interrupt mask.

Specify the handler to use for the given interrupt. This only works with the default interrupt handler, do not mix the use of this routine with a user-installed IRQ handler.

**Parameters:**

irq Mask associated with the interrupt.

handler Address of the function to use as an interrupt service routine

**Note:**

When any handler specifies using IRQ\_VBLANK or IRQ\_HBLANK, DISP\_SR is automatically updated to include the corresponding DISP\_VBLANK\_IRQ or DISP\_HBLANK\_IRQ.

**Warning:**

Only one IRQ\_MASK can be specified with this function.

**Examples:**

[hello\\_world/source/main.cpp](#).

[VoidFn](#) setPowerButtonCB ( [VoidFn](#) CB )  
set callback for DSi Powerbutton press

**Parameters:**

CB function to call when power button pressed

**Returns:**

the previously set callback

swiIntrWait ( [u32](#) waitForSet,  
                  [uint32](#) flags  
                  )

wait for interrupt(s) to occur

**Parameters:**

waitForSet 0: Return if the interrupt has already occurred 1: Wait until the interrupt  
                  has been set since the call

flags interrupt mask to wait for

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/streaming/source/main.c.](#)

swiWaitForVBlank ( void )

Wait for vblank interrupt.

Waits for a vertical blank interrupt

**Note:**

Identical to calling swiIntrWait(1, 1)

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/audio\\_modes/source/main.c,](#)  
[audio/maxmod/basic\\_sound/source/MaxModExample.c,](#)  
[audio/maxmod/reverb/source/main.c,](#)  
[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example/source/template.c,](#)  
[audio/maxmod/song\\_events\\_example2/source/template.c,](#) [audio/maxmod/streaming/](#)  
[source/main.c,](#) [audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c,](#)  
[capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp,](#) [card/EEPROM/source/main.cpp,](#)  
[debugging/exceptionTest/source/exceptionTest.c,](#) [ds\\_motion/source/main.c,](#)  
[dswifi/ap\\_search/source/template.c,](#) [dswifi/autoconnect/source/autoconnect.c,](#) [dswifi/](#)  
[httpget/source/httpget.c,](#) [filesystem/libfat/libfatdir/source/directory.c,](#) [filesystem/nitrofs/](#)  
[nitrodir/source/directory.c,](#) [Graphics/3D/3D\\_Both\\_Screens/source/template.c,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson01/source/nehe1.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson02/source/nehe2.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson03/source/nehe3.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson04/source/nehe4.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson05/source/nehe5.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp,](#)  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp,](#)



[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Palettetd\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Simple\\_Tri/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Textured\\_Quad/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/16bit\\_color\\_bmp/source/template.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/256\\_color\\_bmp/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/advanced.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/scrolling.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/Double\\_Buffer/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Backgrounds/rotation/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Printing/ansi\\_console/source/main.c](#), [Graphics/Printing/console\\_windows/source/main.c](#), [Graphics/Printing/custom\\_font/source/main.c](#), [Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#), [Graphics/Printing/rotscale\\_text/source/main.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/animate\\_simple/source/template.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Sprites/fire\\_and\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#), [Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_rotate/source/template.c](#), [hello\\_world/source/main.cpp](#), [input/keyboard/keyboard\\_async/source/template.c](#), [input/keyboard/keyboard\\_stdin/source/keymain.c](#), [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_area/source/template.c](#), [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_test/source/main.c](#), [time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#), [time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#), and [time/timercallback/source/main.c](#).

---

# fifocommon.h File Reference

low level FIFO API. [More...](#)

```
#include "<a href='\"ndstypes.h\"'>ndstypes.h"
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef
void(* FifoAddressHandlerFunc )(void *address, void *userdata)
    fifo callback function pointer with the sent address and the callback's user
    data.

typedef
void(* FifoDatamsgHandlerFunc )(int num_bytes, void *userdata)
    fifo callback function pointer with the number of bytes sent and the
    callback's user data

typedef
void(* FifoValue32HandlerFunc )(u32 value32, void *userdata)
    fifo callback function pointer with the sent value and the callback's user
    data.
```

## Enumerations

```
enum FifoChannels {
    FIFO\_PM = 0,
    FIFO\_SOUND = 1,
    FIFO\_SYSTEM = 2,
    FIFO\_MAXMOD = 3,
    FIFO\_DSWIFI = 4,
    FIFO\_RSVD\_01 = 5,
    FIFO\_RSVD\_02 = 6,
    FIFO\_RSVD\_03 = 7,
    FIFO\_USER\_01 = 8,
    FIFO\_USER\_02 = 9,
    FIFO\_USER\_03 = 10,
    FIFO\_USER\_04 = 11,
    FIFO\_USER\_05 = 12,
    FIFO\_USER\_06 = 13,
    FIFO\_USER\_07 = 14,
    FIFO\_USER\_08 = 15
}
    Enum values for the different fifo channels.
```

[More...](#)

```
enum FifoPMCommands
    Enum values for the fifo power management commands.
```

```
enum FifoSoundCommand
```

Enum values for the fifo sound commands.

enum [FifoSystemCommands](#)

Enum values for the fifo system commands.

enum [FifoWifiCommands](#)

Enum values for the fifo wifi commands.

enum [PM\\_LedBlinkMode](#) {  
    [PM\\_LED\\_ON](#) = (0<<4),  
    [PM\\_LED\\_SLEEP](#) = (1<<4),  
    [PM\\_LED\\_BLINK](#) = (3<<4)  
}

Power Management LED blink mode control bits.

[More...](#)

## Functions

[bool](#) [fifoCheckAddress](#) (int channel)

checks if there is any addresses in the fifo queue.

[bool](#) [fifoCheckDatamsg](#) (int channel)

checks if there is any data messages in the fifo queue.

int [fifoCheckDatamsgLength](#) (int channel)

gets the number of bytes in the queue for the first data entry.

[bool](#) [fifoCheckValue32](#) (int channel)

checks if there is any values in the fifo queue.

void \* [fifoGetAddress](#) (int channel)

Get the first address in queue for a specific channel.

int [fifoGetDatamsg](#) (int channel, int buffersize, [u8](#) \*destbuffer)

Reads a data message in a given buffer and returns the number of bytes written.

[u32](#) [fifoGetValue32](#) (int channel)

Get the first value32 in queue for a specific channel.

[bool](#) [fifoInit](#) ()

Initializes the fifo system.

[bool](#) [fifoSendAddress](#) (int channel, void \*address)

Send an address to an channel.

[bool](#) [fifoSendDatamsg](#) (int channel, int num\_bytes, [u8](#) \*data\_array)

Send a sequence of bytes to the other CPU.

[bool](#) [fifoSendValue32](#) (int channel, [u32](#) value32)

Send a 32bit value.

[bool](#) [fifoSetAddressHandler](#) (int channel, [FifoAddressHandlerFunc](#) newhandler,

void \*userdata)

Set user address message callback.

[bool](#) [fifoSetDatamsgHandler](#) (int channel, [FifoDatamsgHandlerFunc](#) newhandler, void \*userdata)

Set user data message callback.

[bool](#) [fifoSetValue32Handler](#) (int channel, [FifoValue32HandlerFunc](#) newhandler, void \*userdata)

Set user value32 message callback.

---

## Detailed Description

low level FIFO API.

---

## Typedef Documentation

typedef void(\* [FifoAddressHandlerFunc](#))(void \*address, void \*userdata)

fifo callback function pointer with the sent address and the callback's user data.

The handler is called when new data arrives.

### Note:

callback functions are called from interrupt level, but are well secured. not too much caution is necessary, but don't call alloc, free or printf from within them, just to be safe.

typedef void(\* [FifoDatamsgHandlerFunc](#))(int num\_bytes, void \*userdata)

fifo callback function pointer with the number of bytes sent and the callback's user data

The handler is called when new data arrives. This callback must call [fifoGetData](#) to actually retrieve the data. If it doesn't, the data will be destroyed on return.

### Note:

callback functions are called from interrupt level, but are well secured. not too much caution is necessary, but don't call alloc, free or printf from within them, just to be safe.

typedef void(\* [FifoValue32HandlerFunc](#))([u32](#) value32, void \*userdata)

fifo callback function pointer with the sent value and the callback's user data.

The handler is called when new data arrives.

### Note:

callback functions are called from interrupt level, but are well secured. not too much caution is necessary, but don't call alloc, free or printf from within them, just to be safe.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [FifoChannels](#)

Enum values for the different fifo channels.

### Enumerator:

*FIFO\_PM*            fifo channel reserved for power management.

*FIFO\_SOUND*    fifo channel reserved for sound access.

*FIFO\_SYSTEM*   fifo channel reserved for system functions.

*FIFO\_MAXMOD*   fifo channel reserved for the maxmod library.

*FIFO\_DSWIFI*    fifo channel reserved for the dswifi library.

*FIFO\_RSVD\_01*   fifo channel reserved for future use.

*FIFO\_RSVD\_02*   fifo channel reserved for future use.

*FIFO\_RSVD\_03*   fifo channel reserved for future use.

*FIFO\_USER\_01*   fifo channel available for users.

*FIFO\_USER\_02*   fifo channel available for users.

*FIFO\_USER\_03*   fifo channel available for users.

*FIFO\_USER\_04*   fifo channel available for users.

*FIFO\_USER\_05*   fifo channel available for users.

*FIFO\_USER\_06*   fifo channel available for users.

*FIFO\_USER\_07*   fifo channel available for users.

*FIFO\_USER\_08*   fifo channel available for users.

enum [PM\\_LedBlinkMode](#)

Power Management LED blink mode control bits.

### Enumerator:

*PM\_LED\_ON*        Steady on.

*PM\_LED\_SLEEP*    Blinking, mostly off.

*PM\_LED\_BLINK*    Blinking, mostly on.

---

## Function Documentation

[bool](#) fifoCheckAddress ( int *channel* )

checks if there is any addresses in the fifo queue.

**Parameters:**

channel the channel to check.

**Returns:**

true if there is any addresses in the queue and if there isn't an address handler in place for the channel.

[bool](#) fifoCheckDatamsg ( int *channel* )

checks if there is any data messages in the fifo queue.

**Parameters:**

channel the channel to check.

**Returns:**

true if there is any data messages in the queue and if there isn't a data message handler in place for the channel.

int fifoCheckDatamsgLength ( int *channel* )

gets the number of bytes in the queue for the first data entry.

**Parameters:**

channel the channel to check.

**Returns:**

the number of bytes in the queue for the first data entry, or -1 if there are no entries.

[bool](#) fifoCheckValue32 ( int *channel* )

checks if there is any values in the fifo queue.

**Parameters:**

channel the channel to check.

**Returns:**

true if there is any values in the queue and if there isn't a value handler in place for the channel.

void\* fifoGetAddress ( int *channel* )

Get the first address in queue for a specific channel.

**Parameters:**

channel the channel to check.

**Returns:**

the first address in queue, or NULL if there is none.

```
int fifoGetDatamsg ( int    channel,  
                    int    buffersize,  
                    u8 * destbuffer  
                    )
```

Reads a data message in a given buffer and returns the number of bytes written.

**Parameters:**

channel the channel to check.

bufferize the size of the buffer where the message will be copied to.  
destbuffer a pointer to the buffer where the message will be copied to.

**Returns:**

the number of bytes written, or -1 if there is no message.

**Warning:**

If your buffer is not big enough, you may lose data! Check the data length first if you're not sure what the size is.

[u32](#) fifoGetValue32 ( int *channel* )

Get the first value32 in queue for a specific channel.

**Parameters:**

channel the channel to check.

**Returns:**

the first value32 in queue, or 0 if there is no message.

[bool](#) fifoInit ( )

Initializes the fifo system.

Attempts to sync with the other CPU, if it fails, fifo services won't be provided.

**Note:**

call [irqInit\(\)](#) before calling this function.

**Returns:**

true if syncing worked, false if something went wrong.

[bool](#) fifoSendAddress ( int *channel*,  
void \* *address*  
)

Send an address to an channel.

Transmits an address in the range 0x02000000-0x023FFFFFF to the other CPU.

**Parameters:**

channel channel number to send to.

address address to send.

**Returns:**

true if the address has been send, false if something went wrong.

[bool](#) fifoSendDatamsg ( int *channel*,  
int *num\_bytes*,  
[u8](#) \* *data\_array*  
)

Send a sequence of bytes to the other CPU.

num\_bytes can be between 0 and FIFO\_MAX\_DATA\_BYTES - sending 0 bytes can be useful sometimes...

**Parameters:**

channel	channel number to send to
num_bytes	number of bytes to send
data_array	pointer to data array

### Returns:

true if the data message has been send, false if something went wrong.

```
bool fifoSendValue32 ( int  channel,
                      u32  value32
                      )
```

Send a 32bit value.

Transmits a 32bit value to the other CPU.

### Parameters:

```
channel channel number to send to
value32 32bit value to send
```

### Returns:

true if the value has been send, false if something went wrong.

**Note:**

Transfer is more efficient if the top 8 bits are zero. So sending smaller values or bitmasks that don't include the top bits is preferred.

```
bool fifoSetAddressHandler ( int          channel,
                             FifoAddressHandlerFunc newhandler,
                             void *          userdata
                             )
```

Set user address message callback.

Set a callback to receive incoming address messages on a specific channel.

### Parameters:

channel	channel number to send to.
newhandler	a function pointer to the new handler function.
userdata	a pointer that will be passed on to the handler when it will be called.

### Returns:

true if the handler has been set, false if something went wrong.

**Note:**

Setting the handler for a channel feeds the queue of buffered messages to the new handler, if there are any unread messages.

```
bool fifoSetDatamsgHandler ( int          channel,
                             FifoDatamsgHandlerFunc newhandler,
                             void *          userdata
                             )
```

Set user data message callback.

Set a callback to receive incoming data messages on a specific channel.



**Parameters:**

channel      channel number to send to.  
newhandler   a function pointer to the new handler function.  
userdata      a pointer that will be passed on to the handler when it will be called.

**Returns:**

true if the handler has been set, false if something went wrong.

**Note:**

Setting the handler for a channel feeds the queue of buffered messages to the new handler, if there are any unread messages.

```
bool fifoSetValue32Handler ( int channel,  
                             FifoValue32HandlerFunc newhandler,  
                             void * userdata  
                             )
```

Set user value32 message callback.

Set a callback to receive incoming value32 messages on a specific channel.

**Parameters:**

channel      channel number to send to.  
newhandler   a function pointer to the new handler function.  
userdata      a pointer that will be passed on to the handler when it will be called.

**Returns:**

true if the handler has been set, false if something went wrong.

**Note:**

Setting the handler for a channel feeds the queue of buffered messages to the new handler, if there are any unread messages.

---

# timers.h File Reference

Contains defines, macros and functions for ARM7 and ARM9 timer operation. It also contains a simplified API for timer use and some cpu timing functions. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
```

## Defines

```
#define BUS\_CLOCK (33513982)
    the speed in which the timer ticks in hertz.

#define TIMER0\_CR (*(vu16*)0x04000102)
    Same as TIMER_CR(0).

#define TIMER0\_DATA (*(vu16*)0x04000100)
    Same as TIMER_DATA(0).

#define TIMER1\_CR (*(vu16*)0x04000106)
    Same as TIMER_CR(1).

#define TIMER1\_DATA (*(vu16*)0x04000104)
    Same as TIMER_DATA(1).

#define TIMER2\_CR (*(vu16*)0x0400010A)
    Same as TIMER_CR(2).

#define TIMER2\_DATA (*(vu16*)0x04000108)
    Same as TIMER_DATA(2).

#define TIMER3\_CR (*(vu16*)0x0400010E)
    Same as TIMER_CR(3).

#define TIMER3\_DATA (*(vu16*)0x0400010C)
    Same as TIMER_DATA(3).

#define TIMER\_CASCADE (1<<2)
    When set will cause the timer to count when the timer below overflows
    (unavailable for timer 0).

#define TIMER\_CR(n) (*(vu16*)(0x04000102+((n)<<2)))
    Returns a dereferenced pointer to the data register for timer control Register.

#define TIMER\_DATA(n) (*(vu16*)(0x04000100+((n)<<2)))
    Returns a dereferenced pointer to the data register for timer number "n".

#define TIMER\_ENABLE (1<<7)
    Enables the timer.

#define TIMER\_FREQ(n) (-BUS_CLOCK/(n))
    A macro that calculates TIMER\_DATA(n) settings for a given frequency of n. will
    calculate the correct value for TIMER\_DATA(n) given the frequency in hertz
    (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

#define TIMER\_FREQ\_1024(n) (-(BUS_CLOCK>>10)/(n))
    A macro that calculates TIMER\_DATA(n) settings for a given frequency of n. will
    calculate the correct value for TIMER\_DATA(n) given the frequency in hertz
    (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

#define TIMER\_FREQ\_256(n) (-(BUS_CLOCK>>8)/(n))
```

A macro that calculates `TIMER_DATA(n)` settings for a given frequency of `n`. will calculate the correct value for `TIMER_DATA(n)` given the frequency in hertz (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

```
#define TIMER\_FREQ\_64(n)  (-(BUS_CLOCK>>6)/(n))
```

A macro that calculates `TIMER_DATA(n)` settings for a given frequency of `n`. will calculate the correct value for `TIMER_DATA(n)` given the frequency in hertz (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

```
#define TIMER\_IRQ\_REQ  (1<=6)
```

Causes the timer to request an Interrupt on overflow.

## Enumerations

```
enum ClockDivider {  
    ClockDivider\_1 = 0,  
    ClockDivider\_64 = 1,  
    ClockDivider\_256 = 2,  
    ClockDivider\_1024 = 3  
}  
allowable timer clock dividers.
```

[More...](#)

## Functions

[u32 cpuEndTiming](#) ()  
ends cpu Timing.

[u32 cpuGetTiming](#) ()  
returns the number of ticks which have elapsed since `cpuStartTiming`.

void [cpuStartTiming](#) (int timer)  
begins cpu Timing using two timers for 32bit resolution.

[u16 timerElapsed](#) (int timer)  
returns the ticks elapsed since the last call to [timerElapsed\(\)](#).

[u16 timerPause](#) (int timer)  
pauses the specified timer.

void [timerStart](#) (int timer, [ClockDivider](#) divider, [u16](#) ticks, [VoidFn](#) callback)  
start a hardware timer. Callback is tied directly to interrupt table and called directly resulting in less latency than the attached timer.

[u16 timerStop](#) (int timer)  
Stops the specified timer.

static  
[u16 timerTick](#) (int timer)  
returns the raw ticks of the specified timer.

static  
void [timerUnpause](#) (int timer)  
unpauses the specified timer.

---

## Detailed Description

Contains defines, macros and functions for ARM7 and ARM9 timer operation. It also contains a simplified API for timer use and some cpu timing functions.

The timers are fed with a 33.513982 MHz source on the ARM9 and ARM7.

### Note:

that dswifi will use timer 3 on the arm9, so don't use that if you use dswifi.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define TIMER_CR ( n ) (*(vu16*)(0x04000102+((n)<<2)))
```

Returns a dereferenced pointer to the data register for timer control Register.

**Example Usage:** `TIMER_CR(x) = TIMER_ENABLE | ClockDivider_64;`

Possible bit defines:

### See also:

[TIMER\\_ENABLE](#)  
[TIMER\\_IRQ\\_REQ](#)  
[TIMER\\_CASCADE](#)  
[ClockDivider](#)

### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#).

```
#define TIMER_DATA ( n ) (*(vu16*)(0x04000100+((n)<<2)))
```

Returns a dereferenced pointer to the data register for timer number "n".

### See also:

[TIMER\\_CR\(n\)](#)  
[TIMER\\_FREQ\(n\)](#)

`TIMER_DATA(n)` when set will latch that value into the counter. Everytime the counter rolls over `TIMER_DATA(0)` will return to the latched value. This allows you to control the frequency of the timer using the following formula:

`TIMER_DATA(x) = -(BUS_CLOCK/(freq * divider));`

**Example Usage:** `TIMER_DATA(0) = value;` where 0 can be 0 through 3 and value is 16 bits.

### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#).

```
#define TIMER_FREQ ( n ) (-BUS_CLOCK/(n))
```

A macro that calculates `TIMER_DATA(n)` settings for a given frequency of n. will calculate the correct value for `TIMER_DATA(n)` given the frequency in hertz (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

### Example Usage:

```
calls the timerCallBack function 5 times per second.  
timerStart(0, ClockDivider_1024, TIMER\_FREQ\_1024\(5\),
```

```
timerCallBack);
```

Max frequency is: 33554432Hz Min frequency is: 512Hz

**Note:**

Use the appropriate macro depending on the used clock divider.

```
#define TIMER_FREQ_1024 ( n ) (-(BUS_CLOCK>>10)/(n))
```

A macro that calculates TIMER\_DATA(n) settings for a given frequency of n. will calculate the correct value for TIMER\_DATA(n) given the frequency in hertz (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

**Example Usage:**

```
calls the timerCallBack function 5 times per second.  
    timerStart(0, ClockDivider_1024, TIMER\_FREQ\_1024\(5\),  
timerCallBack);
```

Max frequency is: 32768Hz Min frequency is: 0.5Hz

**Note:**

Use the appropriate macro depending on the used clock divider.

**Examples:**

[time/timercallback/source/main.c](#).

```
#define TIMER_FREQ_256 ( n ) (-(BUS_CLOCK>>8)/(n))
```

A macro that calculates TIMER\_DATA(n) settings for a given frequency of n. will calculate the correct value for TIMER\_DATA(n) given the frequency in hertz (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

**Example Usage:**

```
calls the timerCallBack function 5 times per second.  
    timerStart(0, ClockDivider_1024, TIMER\_FREQ\_1024\(5\),  
timerCallBack);
```

Max frequency is: 131072Hz Min frequency is: 2Hz

**Note:**

Use the appropriate macro depending on the used clock divider.

```
#define TIMER_FREQ_64 ( n ) (-(BUS_CLOCK>>6)/(n))
```

A macro that calculates TIMER\_DATA(n) settings for a given frequency of n. will calculate the correct value for TIMER\_DATA(n) given the frequency in hertz (number of times the timer should overflow per second).

**Example Usage:**

```
calls the timerCallBack function 5 times per second.  
    timerStart(0, ClockDivider_1024, TIMER\_FREQ\_1024\(5\),  
timerCallBack);
```

Max frequency is: 524288Hz Min frequency is: 8Hz

**Note:**

Use the appropriate macro depending on the used clock divider.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [ClockDivider](#)

allowable timer clock dividers.

**Enumerator:**

*ClockDivider\_1* divides the timer clock by 1 (~33513.982 kHz)

*ClockDivider\_64* divides the timer clock by 64 (~523.657 kHz)

*ClockDivider\_256* divides the timer clock by 256 (~130.914 kHz)

*ClockDivider\_1024* divides the timer clock by 1024 (~32.7284 kHz)

---

## Function Documentation

[u32](#) `cpuEndTiming ( )`

ends cpu Timing.

**Returns:**

The number of ticks which have elapsed since `cpuStartTiming`.

[u32](#) `cpuGetTiming ( )`

returns the number of ticks which have elapsed since `cpuStartTiming`.

**Returns:**

The number of ticks which have elapsed since `cpuStartTiming`.

`void cpuStartTiming ( int timer )`

begins cpu Timing using two timers for 32bit resolution.

**Parameters:**

`timer` The base hardware timer to use (0 - 2).

[u16](#) `timerElapsed ( int timer )`

returns the ticks elapsed since the last call to [timerElapsed\(\)](#).

**Parameters:**

`timer` The hardware timer to use (0 - 3).

**Returns:**

The number of ticks which have elapsed since the last call to [timerElapsed\(\)](#).

**Examples:**

[time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#).

u16 timerPause ( int *timer* )

pauses the specified timer.

**Parameters:**

timer The hardware timer to use (0 - 3).

**Returns:**

The number of ticks which have elapsed since the last call to [timerElapsed\(\)](#).

**Examples:**

[time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#).

```
void timerStart ( int          timer,
                  ClockDivider divider,
                  u16          ticks,
                  VoidFn       callback
                )
```

start a hardware timer. Callback is tied directly to interrupt table and called directly resulting in less latency than the attached timer.

**Parameters:**

timer The hardware timer to use (0 - 3).

divider The timer channel clock divider (clock will tick at 33.513982 Mhz / divider)

ticks The number of ticks which must elapse before the timer overflows

callback The callback to be called when the timer expires (if null no irq will be generated by the timer)

**Examples:**

[time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#), and [time/timercallback/source/main.c](#).

u16 timerStop ( int *timer* )

Stops the specified timer.

**Parameters:**

timer The hardware timer to use (0 - 3).

**Returns:**

The number of ticks which have elapsed since the last call to [timerElapsed\(\)](#).

**Examples:**

[time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#).

static u16 timerTick ( int *timer* ) [inline, static]

returns the raw ticks of the specified timer.

**Parameters:**

timer The hardware timer to use (0 - 3).

**Returns:**

the raw ticks of the specified timer data register.

static void timerUnpause ( int *timer* ) [inline, static]

unpauses the specified timer.

**Parameters:**

timer The hardware timer to use (0 - 3).

**Examples:**

[time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#).

---



## User Input/output

# arm9/input.h File Reference

NDS button and touchscreen input support. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/touch.h>
#include <nds/input.h>
```

## Functions

[uint32 keysCurrent](#) (void)

Obtains the current keypad state. Call this function to get keypad state without affecting state of other key functions (keysUp keysHeld etc...)

[uint32 keysDown](#) (void)

Obtains the current keypad pressed state.

[uint32 keysDownRepeat](#) (void)

Obtains the current keypad pressed or repeating state.

[uint32 keysHeld](#) (void)

Obtains the current keypad held state.

void [keysSetRepeat](#) ([u8](#) setDelay, [u8](#) setRepeat)

Sets the key repeat parameters.

[uint32 keysUp](#) (void)

Obtains the current keypad released state.

void [scanKeys](#) (void)

Obtains the current keypad state. Call this function once per main loop in order to use the keypad functions.

void [touchRead](#) ([touchPosition](#) \*data)

Obtains the current touchpad state.

---

## Detailed Description

NDS button and touchscreen input support.

---

## Function Documentation

```
void keysSetRepeat ( u8 setDelay,
                    u8 setRepeat
                    )
```

Sets the key repeat parameters.

### Parameters:

setDelay    Number of scanKeys calls before keys start to repeat.

setRepeat   Number of scanKeys calls before keys repeat.

void touchRead ( [touchPosition](#) \* *data* )

Obtains the current touchpad state.

**Parameters:**

data a [touchPosition](#) ptr which will be filled by the function.

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Env\\_Mapping/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Picking/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Toon\\_Shading/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/console\\_windows/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/simple/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/sprite\\_extended\\_palettes/source/template.c](#),  
[hello\\_world/source/main.cpp](#), [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_area/source/template.c](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_test/source/main.c](#).

---

# keyboard.h File Reference

nds stdio keyboard integration. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
#include <nds/arm9/background.h>
```

## Data Structures

struct [Keyboard](#)  
describes a keyboard. [More...](#)

struct [KeyMap](#)  
defines a key mapping. [More...](#)

## Typedefs

typedef struct  
[Keyboard](#) [Keyboard](#)  
describes a keyboard.

typedef void(\* [KeyChangeCallback](#) )(int key)  
callback function pointer for a key changed.

typedef struct  
[KeyMap](#) [KeyMap](#)  
defines a key mapping.

## Enumerations

enum [KeyboardState](#) {  
    [Lower](#) = 0,  
    [Upper](#) = 1,  
    [Numeric](#) = 2,  
    [Reduced](#) = 3  
}  
States the keyboard can be in, currently only Lower and Upper supported.

[More...](#)

enum [Keys](#) {  
    [NOKEY](#) = -1,  
    [DVK\\_FOLD](#) = -23,  
    [DVK\\_TAB](#) = 9,  
    [DVK\\_BACKSPACE](#) = 8,  
    [DVK\\_CAPS](#) = -15,  
    [DVK\\_SHIFT](#) = -14,  
    [DVK\\_SPACE](#) = 32,  
    [DVK\\_MENU](#) = -5,  
    [DVK\\_ENTER](#) = 10,  
    [DVK\\_CTRL](#) = -16,  
    [DVK\\_UP](#) = -17,

```

    DVK_RIGHT = -18,
    DVK_DOWN = -19,
    DVK_LEFT = -20,
    DVK_ALT = -26
}

```

enum values for the keyboard control keys. negative values are keys with no sensible ascii representation. numbers are chosen to mimic ascii control sequences.

[More...](#)

## Functions

[Keyboard](#) \* [keyboardDemolnit](#) (void)

initializes the keyboard with default options. Same as calling `keyboardInit(NULL, 3, BgType_Text4bpp, BgSize_T_256x512, 20, 0, false, true)`

int [keyboardGetChar](#) (void)

Waits for user to press a key and returns the key pressed. Use `keyboardUpdate` instead for async operation.

[Keyboard](#) \* [keyboardGetDefault](#) (void)

Gets the default keyboard.

int [keyboardGetKey](#) (int x, int y)

returns the ascii code for the key located at the supplied x and y. Will not effect keyboard shift state.

void [keyboardGetString](#) (char \*buffer, int maxLen)

reads the input until a the return key is pressed or the maxLen is exceeded.

void [keyboardHide](#) (void)

Hides the keyboard.

[Keyboard](#) \* [keyboardInit](#) ([Keyboard](#) \*keyboard, int layer, [BgType](#) type, [BgSize](#) size, int mapBase, int tileBase, [bool](#) mainDisplay, [bool](#) loadGraphics)

initializes the keyboard system with the supplied keyboard

void [keyboardShow](#) (void)

Displays the keyboard.

int [keyboardUpdate](#) (void)

Processes the keyboard. Should be called once per frame when using the keyboard in an async manner.

## Detailed Description

nds stdio keyboard integration.

The keyboard component allows the use of a default keyboard via stdin as well as direct via the functions exposed below. The default behavior is a hidden keyboard that shows on a call to `scanf(stdin, ...)`.

By default the keyboard uses background 3 of the sub display, consumes approximatly

40KiB of background vram begining at tile base 1 and 2KB of map stored at map base 30. The default is designed to function along side a default instance of the console print functionality.

To customize keyboard behavior and resource usage modify the keyboard structure returned by [keyboardGetDefault\(\)](#) or create your own keyboard.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [KeyboardState](#)

States the keyboard can be in, currently only Lower and Upper supported.

### Enumerator:

*Lower* Normal keyboard display (lowercase letters)

*Upper* Caps lock Held

*Numeric* Numeric only keypad (not provided by the default keyboard)

*Reduced* Reduced footprint keyboard (not provided by the default keyboard)

enum [Keys](#)

enum values for the keyboard control keys. negative values are keys with no sensible ascii representation. numbers are chosen to mimic ascii control sequences.

### Enumerator:

*NOKEY* will be returned if no key was pressed.

*DVK\_FOLD* will be returned if the fold key was pressed (topleft on the default keyboard).

*DVK\_TAB* will be returned if the tab key was pressed.

*DVK\_BACKSPAC* will be returned if the backspace key was pressed.  
*E*

*DVK\_CAPS* will be returned if the caps key was pressed.

*DVK\_SHIFT* will be returned if the shift key was pressed.

*DVK\_SPACE* will be returned if the space key was pressed.

*DVK\_MENU* will be returned if the menu key was pressed.

*DVK\_ENTER* will be returned if the enter key was pressed.

*DVK\_CTRL* will be returned if the ctrl key was pressed.

*DVK\_UP* will be returned if the up key was pressed.

*DVK\_RIGHT* will be returned if the right key was pressed.

*DVK\_DOWN* will be returned if the down key was pressed.

`DVK_LEFT` will be returned if the left key was pressed.

# Function Documentation

**Returns:**  
a pointer to the current keyboard.

```
int keyboardGetKey ( int x,
                    int y
                    )
```

**Returns:**  
the key pressed or NOKEY if user pressed outside the keypad

```
Keyboard* keyboardInit ( Keyboard * keyboard,  
                           int layer,  
                           BgType type,  
                           BgSize size,  
                           int mapBase,  
                           int tileBase,  
                           bool mainDisplay,  
                           bool loadGraphics
```

)

initializes the keyboard system with the supplied keyboard

**Parameters:**

keyboard	the keyboard struct to initialize (can be NULL)
layer	the background layer to use
type	the background type to initialize
size	the background size to initialize
mapBase	the map base to use for the background
tileBase	the graphics tile base to use for the background
mainDisplay	if true the keyboard will render on the main display
loadGraphics	if true the keyboard graphics will be loaded

**Returns:**

returns the initialized keyboard struct

int keyboardUpdate ( void )

Processes the keyboard. Should be called once per frame when using the keyboard in an async manner.

**Returns:**

the ascii code of the key pressed or -1 if no key was pressed.

**Examples:**

[input/keyboard/keyboard\\_async/source/template.c](input/keyboard/keyboard_async/source/template.c).

---

# console.h File Reference

nds stdio support. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
#include <nds/arm9/background.h>
```

## Data Structures

- struct [ConsoleFont](#)  
a font struct for the console. [More...](#)
- struct [PrintConsole](#)  
console structure used to store the state of a console render context.  
[More...](#)

## Typedefs

- typedef struct  
[ConsoleFont](#) [ConsoleFont](#)  
a font struct for the console.
- typedef struct  
[PrintConsole](#) [PrintConsole](#)  
console structure used to store the state of a console render context.

## Enumerations

- enum [DebugDevice](#) {  
    [DebugDevice\\_NULL](#) = 0x0,  
    [DebugDevice\\_NOCASH](#) = 0x1,  
    [DebugDevice\\_CONSOLE](#) = 0x02  
}  
Console debug devices supported by libnds.  
  
[More...](#)

## Functions

- void [consoleClear](#) (void)  
Clears the screen by using iprintf("\x1b[2J");.
- void [consoleDebugInit](#) ([DebugDevice](#) device)  
Initializes debug console output on stderr to the specified device.
- [PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleDemoInit](#) (void)  
Initialize the console to a default state for prototyping. This function sets the console to use sub display, VRAM\_C, and BG0 and enables MODE\_0\_2D on the sub display. It is intended for use in prototyping applications which need print ability and not actual game use. Print functionality can be utilized with just this call.
- [PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleGetDefault](#) (void)



Gets a pointer to the console with the default values this should only be used when using a single console or without changing the console that is returned, other wise use [consoleInit\(\)](#)

[PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleInit](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console, int layer, [BgType](#) type, [BgSize](#) size, int mapBase, int tileBase, [bool](#) mainDisplay, [bool](#) loadGraphics)  
Initialise the console.

[PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleSelect](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console)  
Make the specified console the render target.

void [consoleSetFont](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console, [ConsoleFont](#) \*font)  
Loads the font into the console.

void [consoleSetWindow](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console, int x, int y, int width, int height)  
Sets the print window.

---

## Detailed Description

nds stdio support.

Provides stdio integration for printing to the DS screen as well as debug print functionality provided by stderr.

General usage is to initialize the console by: [consoleDemolnit\(\)](#) or to customize the console usage by: [consoleInit\(\)](#)

The default instance utilizes the sub display, approximately 15KiB of vram C starting at tile base 0 and 2KiB of map at map base 30.

Debug printing is performed by initializing the debug console via [consoleDebugInit\(\)](#) as follows:

```
consoleDebugInit(DebugDevice_NOCASH);  
fprintf(stderr, "debug message in no$gba window %i", stuff);
```

OR

```
consoleDebugInit(DebugDevice_CONSOLE);  
fprintf(stderr, "debug message on DS console screen");
```

The print console must be initialized to use DB\_CONSOLE

---

## Typedef Documentation

typedef struct [PrintConsole](#) [PrintConsole](#)

console structure used to store the state of a console render context.

Default values from [consoleGetDefault\(\)](#);

```
PrintConsole defaultConsole =  
{  
    Font:  
    {  
        (u16*)default_font_bin, //font gfx  
        0, //font palette  
        0, //font color count  
        4, //bpp
```

```

        0, //first ascii character in the set
        128, //number of characters in the font set
        true, //convert to single color
    },
    0, //font background map
    0, //font background gfx
    31, //map base
    0, //char base
    0, //bg layer in use
    -1, //bg id
    0,0, //cursorX cursorY
    0,0, //prevcursorX prevcursorY
    32, //console width
    24, //console height
    0, //window x
    0, //window y
    32, //window width
    24, //window height
    3, //tab size
    0, //font character offset
    0, //selected palette
    0, //print callback
    false, //console initialized
    true, //load graphics
};

```

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [DebugDevice](#)

Console debug devices supported by libnds.

### Enumerator:

*DebugDevice\_NULL* swallows prints to stderr

*DebugDevice\_NOCASH* Directs stderr debug statements to no\$gba debug window.

*DebugDevice\_CONSOLE* Directs stderr debug statements to DS console window.

---

## Function Documentation

void consoleDebugInit ( [DebugDevice](#) device )

Initializes debug console output on stderr to the specified device.

### Parameters:

device The debug device (or devices) to output debug print statements to

[PrintConsole](#)\* consoleDemoInit ( void )

Initialize the console to a default state for prototyping. This function sets the console to use sub display, VRAM\_C, and BG0 and enables MODE\_0\_2D on the sub display. It is intended for use in prototyping applications which need print ability and not actual game use. Print functionality can be utilized with just this call.

### Returns:

A pointer to the current [PrintConsole](#).

### Examples:

[audio/maxmod/audio\\_modes/source/main.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/basic\\_sound/source/MaxModExample.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/reverb/source/main.c](#), [audio/maxmod/streaming/source/main.c](#), [audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c](#), [card/EEPROM/source/main.cpp](#),  
[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#), [dswifi/ap\\_search/source/template.c](#),  
[dswifi/autoconnect/source/autoconnect.c](#), [dswifi/httpget/source/httpget.c](#),  
[filesystem/libfat/libfatdir/source/directory.c](#),  
[filesystem/nitrofs/nitrodir/source/directory.c](#), [Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/16bit\\_color\\_bmp/source/template.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/256\\_color\\_bmp/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/Double\\_Buffer/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/rotation/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/ansi\\_console/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/console\\_windows/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), [hello\\_world/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/keyboard/keyboard\\_async/source/template.c](#),  
[input/keyboard/keyboard\\_stdin/source/keymain.c](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_area/source/template.c](#), [time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#),  
and [time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#).

[PrintConsole](#)\* consoleGetDefault ( void )

Gets a pointer to the console with the default values this should only be used when using a single console or without changing the console that is returned, other wise use [consoleInit\(\)](#)

### Returns:

A pointer to the console with the default values

```
PrintConsole* consoleInit ( PrintConsole * console,  
                           int layer,  
                           BgType type,  
                           BgSize size,  
                           int mapBase,  
                           int tileBase,  
                           bool mainDisplay,  
                           bool loadGraphics  
                           )
```

Initialise the console.

### Parameters:

console	A pointer to the console data to initialize (if it's NULL, the default console will be used)
layer	background layer to use
type	the type of the background

size            the size of the background  
mapBase        the map base  
tileBase        the tile graphics base  
mainDisplay    if true main engine is used, otherwise false  
loadGraphics   if true the default font graphics will be loaded into the layer

**Returns:**

A pointer to the current console.

**Examples:**

[capture/ScreenShot/source/main.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Palettered\\_Cube/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/custom\\_font/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/rotscale\\_text/source/main.c](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_test/source/main.c](#).

[PrintConsole](#)\* consoleSelect ( [PrintConsole](#) \* console )

Make the specified console the render target.

**Parameters:**

console    A pointer to the console struct (must have been initialized with  
consoleInit(PrintConsole\* console)

**Returns:**

a pointer to the previous console

**Examples:**

[Graphics/Printing/console\\_windows/source/main.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Printing/print\\_both\\_screens/source/template.c](#).

```
void consoleSetFont ( PrintConsole * console,
                     ConsoleFont * font
                     )
```

Loads the font into the console.

**Parameters:**

console    pointer to the console to update, if NULL it will update the current console  
font        the font to load

**Examples:**

[Graphics/Printing/custom\\_font/source/main.c](#), and  
[Graphics/Printing/rotscale\\_text/source/main.c](#).

```
void consoleSetWindow ( PrintConsole * console,
                       int           x,
                       int           y,
                       int           width,
                       int           height
                       )
```

Sets the print window.

**Parameters:**

console    console to set, if NULL it will set the current console window

x	x location of the window
y	y location of the window
width	width of the window
height	height of the window

**Examples:**

[dswifi/ap\\_search/source/template.c](#), and [Graphics/Printing/console\\_windows/source/main.c](#).

---

## Utility

# decompress.h File Reference

wraps the bios decompress functionality into something a bit easier to deal with. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
#include <nds/bios.h>
```

## Enumerations

```
enum DecompressType {
    LZ77,
    LZ77Vram,
    HUFF,
    RLE,
    RLEVram
}
the types of decompression available.
```

[More...](#)

## Functions

```
void decompress (const void *data, void *dst, DecompressType type)
    decompresses data using the suported type
void decompressStream (const void *data, void *dst, DecompressType type,
    getBytesCallback readCB, getHeaderCallback getHeaderCB)
    decompresses data using the suported type (only LZ77Vram, HUFF, and
    RLEVram support streaming)
```

---

## Detailed Description

wraps the bios decompress functionality into something a bit easier to deal with.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [DecompressType](#)  
the types of decompression available.

### Enumerator:

<i>LZ77</i>	LZ77 decompression.
<i>LZ77Vram</i>	vram safe LZ77 decompression.
<i>HUFF</i>	vram safe huff decompression.

*RLE* run length encoded decompression.

*RLEVram* vram safe run length encoded decompression.

---

## Function Documentation

```
void decompress ( const void *    data,  
                 void *         dst,  
                 DecompressType type  
                )
```

decompresses data using the supported type

### Parameters:

*dst* the destination to decompress to

*data* the data to decompress

*type* the type of data to decompress

### Examples:

[Graphics/Backgrounds/16bit\\_color\\_bmp/source/template.cpp](#).

```
void decompressStream ( const void *    data,  
                      void *         dst,  
                      DecompressType type,  
                      getBytesCallback readCB,  
                      getBytesCallback getHeaderCB  
                     )
```

decompresses data using the supported type (only LZ77Vram, HUFF, and RLEVram support streaming)

### Parameters:

*dst* the destination to decompress to.

*data* the data to decompress.

*type* the type of data to decompress.

*readCB* a callback to read the next byte of data.

*getHeaderCB* a callback to read the 32 byte header.

---

# image.h File Reference

An image abstraction for working with image data. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/arm9/video.h>
#include <nds/arm9/pcx.h>
```

## Data Structures

struct [RGB\\_24](#)  
holds a red green blue triplet [More...](#)

struct [sImage](#)  
A generic image structure. [More...](#)

## Typedefs

typedef struct  
[sImage](#) [sImage](#)  
A generic image structure.

## Functions

struct [RGB\\_24](#) [\\_\\_attribute\\_\\_\(\(packed\)\) RGB\\_24](#)  
holds a red green blue triplet

void [image24to16](#) ([sImage](#) \*img)  
Converts a 24 bit image to 16 bit.

void [image8to16](#) ([sImage](#) \*img)  
Converts an 8 bit image to 16 bit setting the alpha bit.

void [image8to16trans](#) ([sImage](#) \*img, [u8](#) transparentColor)  
Converts an 8 bit image to 16 bit with alpha bit cleared for the supplied palette index.

void [imageDestroy](#) ([sImage](#) \*img)  
frees the image data. Only call if the image data was returned from an image loader

void [imageTileData](#) ([sImage](#) \*img)  
Tiles 8 bit image data into a sequence of 8x8 tiles.

## Variables

unsigned char [b](#)  
8 bits for the blue value.

unsigned char [g](#)  
8 bits for the green value.

unsigned char [r](#)  
8 bits for the red value.

---



## Detailed Description

An image abstraction for working with image data.

Image data pointers must be allocated using malloc as the conversion routines will free the pointers and allocate new data. As such any loader implemented utilizing this structure must use malloc() to allocate the image pointer data.

---

## Function Documentation

struct [RGB\\_24](#) \_\_attribute\_\_((packed))

holds a red green blue triplet

holds a red green blue triplet

Theme/Color values:

- 0 = Gray
- 1 = Brown
- 2 = Red
- 3 = Pink
- 4 = Orange
- 5 = Yellow
- 6 = Yellow/Green-ish
- 7 = Green
- 8 = Dark Green
- 9 = Green/Blue-ish
- 10 = Light Blue
- 11 = Blue
- 12 = Dark Blue
- 13 = Dark Purple
- 14 = Purple
- 15 = Purple/Red-ish

Language values:

- 0 = Japanese
- 1 = English
- 2 = French
- 3 = German
- 4 = Italian
- 5 = Spanish
- 6 = Chinese(?)
- 7 = Unknown/Reserved

< User's language.

< GBA screen selection (lower screen if set, otherwise upper screen).

< Brightness level at power on, dslite.

< The DS should boot from the DS cart or GBA cart automatically if one is inserted.

< User Settings Lost (0=Normal, 1=Prompt/Settings Lost)

void image24to16 ( [sImage](#) \* *img* )

Converts a 24 bit image to 16 bit.

**Parameters:**

img a pointer to image to manipulate

void image8to16 ( [sImage](#) \* img )

Converts an 8 bit image to 16 bit setting the alpha bit.

**Parameters:**

img a pointer to image to manipulate

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

void image8to16trans ( [sImage](#) \* img,  
                          u8           transparentColor  
                          )

Converts an 8 bit image to 16 bit with alpha bit cleared for the supplied palette index.

**Parameters:**

img a pointer to image to manipulate

transparentColor Color indexes equal to this value will have the alpha bit clear

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#).

void imageDestroy ( [sImage](#) \* img )

frees the image data. Only call if the image data was returned from an image loader

**Parameters:**

img a pointer to image to manipulate (the image data will be free() )

**Examples:**

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#), and  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

void imageTileData ( [sImage](#) \* img )

Tiles 8 bit image data into a sequence of 8x8 tiles.

**Parameters:**

img a pointer to image to manipulate

**Examples:**

[Graphics/Sprites/fire\\_and\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#).

---

# pcx.h File Reference

A simple 256 color pcx file loader. [More...](#)

## Functions

struct PCXHeader [\\_\\_attribute\\_\\_](#) ((packed)) PCXHeader  
holds a red green blue triplet  
int [loadPCX](#) (const unsigned char \*pcx, [sImage](#) \*image)  
Loads an image structure with data from PCX formatted data.

## Variables

char [version](#)  
version of the banner.

---

## Detailed Description

A simple 256 color pcx file loader.

---

## Function Documentation

int loadPCX ( const unsigned char \* *pcx*,  
[sImage](#) \* *image*  
)  
Loads an image structure with data from PCX formatted data.

### Parameters:

pcx a pointer to the pcx file loaded into memory  
image the image structure to fill in (the loader will allocate room for the palette and pixel data)

### Examples:

[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson06/source/nehe6.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson07/source/nehe7.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson08/source/nehe8.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson09/source/nehe9.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10b/source/nehe10b.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson11/source/nehe11.cpp](#), [Graphics/3D/Ortho/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/fire\\_and\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), and [input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_look/source/main.cpp](#).

---

# dynamicArray.h File Reference

A dynamically resizing array for general use. [More...](#)

```
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
```

## Data Structures

struct [DynamicArray](#)  
A resizable array. [More...](#)

## Typedefs

typedef struct  
[DynamicArray](#) [DynamicArray](#)  
A resizable array.

## Functions

void [DynamicArrayDelete](#) ([DynamicArray](#) \*v)  
Frees memory allocated by the dynamic array.

void \* [DynamicArrayGet](#) ([DynamicArray](#) \*v, unsigned int index)  
Gets the entry at the supplied index.

void \* [DynamicArrayInit](#) ([DynamicArray](#) \*v, unsigned int initialSize)  
Initializes an array with the supplied initial size.

[bool](#) [DynamicArraySet](#) ([DynamicArray](#) \*v, unsigned int index, void \*item)  
Sets the entry to the supplied value.

---

## Detailed Description

A dynamically resizing array for general use.

---

## Function Documentation

void DynamicArrayDelete ( [DynamicArray](#) \* v )  
Frees memory allocated by the dynamic array.

### Parameters:

v The array to delete

void\* DynamicArrayGet ( [DynamicArray](#) \* v,  
                          unsigned int     index  
                          )

Gets the entry at the supplied index.

**Parameters:**

*v*        The array to get from.  
*index*   The index of the data to get.

**Returns:**

The data or NULL if *v* is NULL or the index is out of range.

```
void* DynamicArrayInit ( DynamicArray * v,  
                        unsigned int  initialSize  
                        )
```

Initializes an array with the supplied initial size.

**Parameters:**

*v*            the array to initialize  
*initialSize* the initial size to allocate

**Returns:**

a pointer to the data, or NULL on error.

```
bool DynamicArraySet ( DynamicArray * v,  
                      unsigned int  index,  
                      void *       item  
                      )
```

Sets the entry to the supplied value.

**Parameters:**

*v*        The array to set  
*index*   The index of the data to set (array will be resized to fit the  
         index).  
*item*   The data to set.

**Returns:**

false if *v* is NULL or there isn't enough memory, true otherwise

---

# linkedlist.h File Reference

A simple doubly linked, unsorted list implementation. [More...](#)

```
#include <malloc.h>
```

## Data Structures

struct [LinkedList](#)

A node for the linked list. [More...](#)

## Typedefs

typedef struct [LinkedList](#) [LinkedList](#)

A node for the linked list.

## Functions

[LinkedList](#) \* [linkedlistAdd](#) ([LinkedList](#) \*\*front, void \*data)

Adds data to a linked list.

void [linkedlistRemove](#) ([LinkedList](#) \*node)

Removes a node from a linked list.

---

## Detailed Description

A simple doubly linked, unsorted list implementation.

---

## Function Documentation

```
LinkedList* linkedlistAdd ( LinkedList ** front,  
                           void *      data  
                           )
```

Adds data to a linked list.

This will only store the pointer to the data, so you have to make sure that the pointer stays valid.

### Parameters:

front A pointer to a pointer to the front of the linked list (or a pointer to NULL if you don't have a linked list yet).

data A pointer to the data you want to store.

### Returns:

A pointer to the new node, which is also the new front, or NULL if there is not enough memory.

```
void linkedlistRemove ( LinkedList * node )
```

Removes a node from a linked list.

The data pointer of the node will be lost after this, so make sure you don't need it anymore.

**Parameters:**

node The node you want to remove.

---

## Custom Peripherals

# rumble.h File Reference

nds rumble option pak support. [More...](#)

## Functions

[bool](#) [isRumbleInserted](#) (void)  
Check for rumble option pak.  
void [setRumble](#) ([bool](#) position)  
Fires the rumble actuator.

## Variables

typedef [\\_\\_attribute](#)  
the NDS file header format See gbatek for more info.

---

## Detailed Description

nds rumble option pak support.

---

## Function Documentation

[bool](#) [isRumbleInserted](#) ( void )  
Check for rumble option pak.

### Returns:

true if the cart in the GBA slot is a Rumble option pak.

void [setRumble](#) ( [bool](#) *position* )  
Fires the rumble actuator.

### Parameters:

*position* Alternates position of the actuator in the pak

---

## Variable Documentation

[\\_\\_attribute\\_\\_](#)  
the NDS file header format See gbatek for more info.  
the NDS banner format. See gbatek for more information.  
< User's language.



- < GBA screen selection (lower screen if set, otherwise upper screen).
  - < Brightness level at power on, dslite.
  - < The DS should boot from the DS cart or GBA cart automatically if one is inserted.
  - < User Settings Lost (0=Normal, 1=Prompt/Settings Lost)
-

# ndsmotion.h File Reference

interface code for the ds motion card, ds motion pak, MK6. [More...](#)

## Functions

int [motion\\_acceleration\\_x](#) (void)  
gets acceleration value to mili G (where g is 9.8 m/s\*s)

int [motion\\_acceleration\\_y](#) (void)  
gets acceleration value to mili G (where g is 9.8 m/s\*s)

int [motion\\_acceleration\\_z](#) (void)  
gets acceleration value to mili G (where g is 9.8 m/s\*s)

void [motion\\_deinit](#) (void)  
Deinitializes the DS Motion Sensor.

void [motion\\_enable\\_ain\\_1](#) (void)  
This enables the analog input number 1. Required before reading analog input number 1.

void [motion\\_enable\\_ain\\_2](#) (void)  
This enables the analog input number 2. Required before reading analog input number 2.

### MotionCalibration

\* [motion\\_get\\_calibration](#) (void)  
This returns the current calibration settings for saving.

int [motion\\_init](#) (void)  
Initializes the DS Motion Sensor. Run this before using any of the DS Motion Sensor functions save the return value and pass it to the other motion\_ functions.

int [motion\\_read\\_ain\\_1](#) (void)  
This reads the analog input number 1. analog input number 1 needs to be enabled before reading.

int [motion\\_read\\_ain\\_2](#) (void)  
This reads the analog input number 2. analog input number 2 needs to be enabled before reading.

signed int [motion\\_read\\_gyro](#) (void)  
read the Z rotational speed

signed int [motion\\_read\\_x](#) (void)  
read the X acceleration

signed int [motion\\_read\\_y](#) (void)  
read the Y acceleration

signed int [motion\\_read\\_z](#) (void)  
read the Z acceleration

int [motion\\_rotation](#) (void)  
converts raw rotation value to degrees per second

void [motion\\_set\\_calibration](#) (MotionCalibration \*cal)

This sets the calibration settings. Intended to restore saved calibration settings.

void [motion\\_set\\_offs\\_gyro](#) (void)

this should be called when the axis is under no rotation Default is 1680

void [motion\\_set\\_offs\\_x](#) (void)

this should be called when the axis is under no acceleration. Default is 2048

void [motion\\_set\\_offs\\_y](#) (void)

this should be called when the axis is under no acceleration Default is 2048

void [motion\\_set\\_offs\\_z](#) (void)

this should be called when the axis is under no acceleration Default is 2048

void [motion\\_set\\_sens\\_gyro](#) (int sens)

this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default is 825

void [motion\\_set\\_sens\\_x](#) (int sens)

this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default is 819

void [motion\\_set\\_sens\\_y](#) (int sens)

this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default is 819

void [motion\\_set\\_sens\\_z](#) (int sens)

this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default is 819

---

## Detailed Description

interface code for the ds motion card, ds motion pak, MK6.

---

## Function Documentation

int motion\_init ( void )

Initializes the DS Motion Sensor. Run this before using any of the DS Motion Sensor functions save the return value and pass it to the other motion\_ functions.

**Returns:**

**Examples:**

[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#).

signed int motion\_read\_gyro ( void )

read the Z rotational speed

**Returns:**

**Examples:**

[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#).

signed int motion\_read\_x ( void )  
read the X acceleration

**Returns:****Examples:**

[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#).

signed int motion\_read\_y ( void )  
read the Y acceleration

**Returns:****Examples:**

[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#).

signed int motion\_read\_z ( void )  
read the Z acceleration

**Returns:****Examples:**

[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#).

void motion\_set\_calibration ( MotionCalibration \* *cal* )  
This sets the calibration settings. Intended to restore saved calibration settings.

**Parameters:**

*cal* the calibration settings

void motion\_set\_sens\_gyro ( int *sens* )  
this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default is 825

**Parameters:**

*sens* the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations

void motion\_set\_sens\_x ( int *sens* )  
this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default is 819

**Parameters:**

*sens* the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations

void motion\_set\_sens\_y ( int *sens* )  
this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default is 819

**Parameters:**

*sens* the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations

void motion\_set\_sens\_z ( int *sens* )  
this should be passed the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations. Default

is 819

**Parameters:**

sens the raw reading at 1g for accurate acceleration calculations

**Examples:**

[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#).

---

# piano.h File Reference

NDS Easy Piano option pack support. [More...](#)

## Functions

[bool](#) [pianoIsInserted](#) ()

Check for piano option pack.

[u16](#) [pianoKeysDown](#) ()

Obtains the current piano keys pressed state.

[u16](#) [pianoKeysHeld](#) ()

Obtains the current piano keys held state.

[u16](#) [pianoKeysUp](#) ()

Obtains the current piano keys released state.

void [pianoScanKeys](#) ()

Obtain the current piano state. Call this function once per main loop to use the piano functions.

---

## Detailed Description

NDS Easy Piano option pack support.

---

## Function Documentation

[bool](#) [pianoIsInserted](#) ( )

Check for piano option pack.

### Returns:

true if the cart in the GBA slot is the piano option pack.

---

## Debugging

## console.h File Reference

nds stdio support. [More...](#)

```
#include <nds/ndstypes.h>
#include <nds/arm9/background.h>
```

### Data Structures

- struct [ConsoleFont](#)  
a font struct for the console. [More...](#)
- struct [PrintConsole](#)  
console structure used to store the state of a console render context.  
[More...](#)

### Typedefs

- typedef struct  
[ConsoleFont](#) [ConsoleFont](#)  
a font struct for the console.
- typedef struct  
[PrintConsole](#) [PrintConsole](#)  
console structure used to store the state of a console render context.

### Enumerations

- enum [DebugDevice](#) {  
    [DebugDevice\\_NULL](#) = 0x0,  
    [DebugDevice\\_NOCASH](#) = 0x1,  
    [DebugDevice\\_CONSOLE](#) = 0x02  
}  
Console debug devices supported by libnds.  
  
[More...](#)

### Functions

- void [consoleClear](#) (void)  
Clears the screen by using `iprntf("\x1b[2J");`.
- void [consoleDebugInit](#) ([DebugDevice](#) device)  
Initializes debug console output on stderr to the specified device.
- [PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleDemoInit](#) (void)  
Initialize the console to a default state for prototyping. This function sets the console to use sub display, VRAM\_C, and BG0 and enables MODE\_0\_2D on the sub display. It is intended for use in prototyping

applications which need print ability and not actual game use. Print functionality can be utilized with just this call.

[PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleGetDefault](#) (void)

Gets a pointer to the console with the default values this should only be used when using a single console or without changing the console that is returned, other wise use [consoleInit\(\)](#)

[PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleInit](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console, int layer, [BgType](#) type, [BgSize](#) size, int mapBase, int tileBase, [bool](#) mainDisplay, [bool](#) loadGraphics)

Initialise the console.

[PrintConsole](#) \* [consoleSelect](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console)

Make the specified console the render target.

void [consoleSetFont](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console, [ConsoleFont](#) \*font)

Loads the font into the console.

void [consoleSetWindow](#) ([PrintConsole](#) \*console, int x, int y, int width, int height)

Sets the print window.

---

## Detailed Description

nds stdio support.

Provides stdio integration for printing to the DS screen as well as debug print functionality provided by stderr.

General usage is to initialize the console by: [consoleDemolnit\(\)](#) or to customize the console usage by: [consoleInit\(\)](#)

The default instance utilizes the sub display, approximately 15KiB of vram C starting at tile base 0 and 2KiB of map at map base 30.

Debug printing is performed by initializing the debug console via [consoleDebugInit\(\)](#) as follows:

```
consoleDebugInit(DebugDevice_NOCASH);  
fprintf(stderr, "debug message in no$gba window %i", stuff);
```

OR

```
consoleDebugInit(DebugDevice_CONSOLE);  
fprintf(stderr, "debug message on DS console screen");
```

The print console must be initialized to use DB\_CONSOLE

---

## Typedef Documentation

typedef struct [PrintConsole](#) [PrintConsole](#)

console structure used to store the state of a console render context.

Default values from [consoleGetDefault\(\)](#):

```
PrintConsole defaultConsole =  
{  
Font:  
{
```



```

        (u16*)default_font_bin, //font gfx
        0, //font palette
        0, //font color count
        4, //bpp
        0, //first ascii character in the set
        128, //number of characters in the font set
        true, //convert to single color
    },
    0, //font background map
    0, //font background gfx
    31, //map base
    0, //char base
    0, //bg layer in use
    -1, //bg id
    0,0, //cursorX cursorY
    0,0, //prevcursorX prevcursorY
    32, //console width
    24, //console height
    0, //window x
    0, //window y
    32, //window width
    24, //window height
    3, //tab size
    0, //font character offset
    0, //selected palette
    0, //print callback
    false, //console initialized
    true, //load graphics
};

```

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum [DebugDevice](#)

Console debug devices supported by libnds.

### Enumerator:

*DebugDevice\_NULL* swallows prints to stderr

*DebugDevice\_NOCASH* Directs stderr debug statements to no\$gba debug window.

*DebugDevice\_CONSOLE* Directs stderr debug statements to DS console window.

---

## Function Documentation

void consoleDebugInit ( [DebugDevice](#) device )

Initializes debug console output on stderr to the specified device.

### Parameters:

device The debug device (or devices) to output debug print statements to

[PrintConsole](#)\* consoleDemolnit ( void )

Initialize the console to a default state for prototyping. This function sets the console to use sub display, VRAM\_C, and BG0 and enables MODE\_0\_2D on the sub display. It is

intended for use in prototyping applications which need print ability and not actual game use. Print functionality can be utilized with just this call.

**Returns:**

A pointer to the current [PrintConsole](#).

**Examples:**

[audio/maxmod/audio\\_modes/source/main.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/basic\\_sound/source/MaxModExample.c](#),  
[audio/maxmod/reverb/source/main.c](#), [audio/maxmod/streaming/source/main.c](#), [audio/micrecord/source/micrecord.c](#), [card/EEPROM/source/main.cpp](#),  
[ds\\_motion/source/main.c](#), [dswifi/ap\\_search/source/template.c](#),  
[dswifi/autoconnect/source/autoconnect.c](#), [dswifi/httpget/source/httpget.c](#),  
[filesystem/libfat/libfatdir/source/directory.c](#),  
[filesystem/nitrofs/nitrodir/source/directory.c](#), [Graphics/3D/BoxTest/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/3D/nehe/lesson10/source/nehe10.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/16bit\\_color\\_bmp/source/template.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/256\\_color\\_bmp/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/all\\_in\\_one/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/Double\\_Buffer/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Backgrounds/rotation/source/main.cpp](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/ansi\\_console/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Printing/console\\_windows/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/allocation\\_test/source/main.c](#),  
[Graphics/Sprites/bitmap\\_sprites/source/main.cpp](#), [hello\\_world/source/main.cpp](#),  
[input/keyboard/keyboard\\_async/source/template.c](#),  
[input/keyboard/keyboard\\_stdin/source/keymain.c](#),  
[input/Touch\\_Pad/touch\\_area/source/template.c](#), [time/RealTimeClock/source/main.c](#),  
and [time/stopwatch/source/main.c](#).

[PrintConsole](#)\* consoleGetDefault ( void )

Gets a pointer to the console with the default values this should only be used when using a single console or without changing the console that is returned, other wise use [consoleInit\(\)](#)

**Returns:**

A pointer to the console with the default values

```
PrintConsole* consoleInit ( PrintConsole * console,  
                           int layer,  
                           BgType type,  
                           BgSize size,  
                           int mapBase,  
                           int tileBase,  
                           bool mainDisplay,  
                           bool loadGraphics  
                           )
```

Initialise the console.

**Parameters:**

console            A pointer to the console data to initialize (if it's NULL, the default



Sets the print window.

**Parameters:**

console	console to set, if NULL it will set the current console window
x	x location of the window
y	y location of the window
width	width of the window
height	height of the window

**Examples:**

[dswifi/ap\\_search/source/template.c](#), and [Graphics/Printing/console\\_windows/source/main.c](#).

---

# debug.h File Reference

Currently only used to send debug messages to NO\$GBA debug window. [More...](#)

## Functions

void [nocashMessage](#) (const char \*[message](#))

Send a message to the no\$gba debug window.

---

## Detailed Description

Currently only used to send debug messages to NO\$GBA debug window.

On the ARM 9 this functionality is best accessed via the console studio integration.

- [Debug Messages via stdio](#)
- 

## Function Documentation

void nocashMessage ( const char \* *message* )

Send a message to the no\$gba debug window.

### Parameters:

message The message to send

---

# **sassert.h File Reference**

Simple assertion with a message complies to nop if NDEBUG is defined. [More...](#)

```
#include "_ansi.h"
```

## **Defines**

```
#define sassert(e, msg) ((e) ? (void)0 : __sassert(__FILE__, __LINE__, #e, msg))
```

Causes a blue screen of death if e is not true with the msg "msg" displayed.

---